



# Solution Deployment Descriptor Specification 1.0

Committee Draft 4

8 April 2008

## Specification URIs:

### This Version:

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cd04/sdd-spec-v1.0-cd04.html>

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cd04/sdd-spec-v1.0-cd04.doc>

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cd04/sdd-spec-v1.0-cd04.pdf>

### Previous Version:

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/pr01/sdd-spec-v1.0-pr01.html>

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/pr01/sdd-spec-v1.0-pr01.doc>

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/pr01/sdd-spec-v1.0-pr01.pdf>

### Latest Version:

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-spec-v1.0.html>

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-spec-v1.0.doc>

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-spec-v1.0.pdf>

## Technical Committee:

OASIS Solution Deployment Descriptor (SDD) TC

### Chair(s):

Brent Miller, IBM Corporation

### Editor(s):

Julia McCarthy, IBM Corporation

Robert Dickau, Macrovision Corporation

Merri Jensen, SAS Institute, Inc.

### Related work:

None

### Declared XML Namespace(s):

sdd-common=<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/ns/common>

sdd-pd=<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/ns/packageDescriptor>

sdd-dd=<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/ns/deploymentDescriptor>

### Abstract:

This specification defines schema for two XML document types: *Package Descriptors* and *Deployment Descriptors*. Package Descriptors define characteristics of a package used to deploy a solution. Deployment Descriptors define characteristics of the content of a solution package, including the requirements that are relevant for creation, configuration and maintenance of the solution content. The semantics of the descriptors are fully defined, allowing software

43 implementations to precisely understand the intent of the descriptor authors and to use the  
44 information provided in the descriptors to support solution deployment.

45 **Status:**

46 This document was last revised or approved by the OASIS Solution Deployment Descriptor  
47 (SDD) Technical Committee on the above date. The level of approval is also listed above. Check  
48 the “Latest Version” or “Latest Approved Version” location noted above for possible later revisions  
49 of this document.

50 Technical Committee members should send comments on this specification to the Technical  
51 Committee’s email list. Others should send comments to the Technical Committee by using the  
52 “Send A Comment” button on the Technical Committee’s web page at [http://www.oasis-  
open.org/committees/sdd/](http://www.oasis-<br/>53 open.org/committees/sdd/).

54 For information on whether any patents have been disclosed that may be essential to  
55 implementing this specification, and any offers of patent licensing terms, please refer to the  
56 Intellectual Property Rights section of the Technical Committee web page ([http://www.oasis-  
open.org/committees/sdd/ipr.php](http://www.oasis-<br/>57 open.org/committees/sdd/ipr.php)).

58 The non-normative errata page for this specification is located at [http://www.oasis-  
open.org/committees/sdd/](http://www.oasis-<br/>59 open.org/committees/sdd/).

60

---

## 61 Notices

62 Copyright © OASIS® 2007, 2008. All Rights Reserved.

63 All capitalized terms in the following text have the meanings assigned to them in the OASIS Intellectual  
64 Property Rights Policy (the "OASIS IPR Policy"). The full Policy may be found at the OASIS website.

65 This document and translations of it may be copied and furnished to others, and derivative works that  
66 comment on or otherwise explain it or assist in its implementation may be prepared, copied, published,  
67 and distributed, in whole or in part, without restriction of any kind, provided that the above copyright notice  
68 and this section are included on all such copies and derivative works. However, this document itself may  
69 not be modified in any way, including by removing the copyright notice or references to OASIS, except as  
70 needed for the purpose of developing any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical  
71 Committee (in which case the rules applicable to copyrights, as set forth in the OASIS IPR Policy, must  
72 be followed) or as required to translate it into languages other than English.

73 The limited permissions granted above are perpetual and will not be revoked by OASIS or its successors  
74 or assigns.

75 This document and the information contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and OASIS  
76 DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY  
77 WARRANTY THAT THE USE OF THE INFORMATION HEREIN WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY  
78 OWNERSHIP RIGHTS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A  
79 PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

80 OASIS requests that any OASIS Party or any other party that believes it has patent claims that would  
81 necessarily be infringed by implementations of this OASIS Committee Specification or OASIS Standard,  
82 to notify OASIS TC Administrator and provide an indication of its willingness to grant patent licenses to  
83 such patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that  
84 produced this specification.

85 OASIS invites any party to contact the OASIS TC Administrator if it is aware of a claim of ownership of  
86 any patent claims that would necessarily be infringed by implementations of this specification by a patent  
87 holder that is not willing to provide a license to such patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR  
88 Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that produced this specification. OASIS may include such  
89 claims on its website, but disclaims any obligation to do so.

90 OASIS takes no position regarding the validity or scope of any intellectual property or other rights that  
91 might be claimed to pertain to the implementation or use of the technology described in this document or  
92 the extent to which any license under such rights might or might not be available; neither does it  
93 represent that it has made any effort to identify any such rights. Information on OASIS' procedures with  
94 respect to rights in any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical Committee can be  
95 found on the OASIS website. Copies of claims of rights made available for publication and any  
96 assurances of licenses to be made available, or the result of an attempt made to obtain a general license  
97 or permission for the use of such proprietary rights by implementers or users of this OASIS Committee  
98 Specification or OASIS Standard, can be obtained from the OASIS TC Administrator. OASIS makes no  
99 representation that any information or list of intellectual property rights will at any time be complete, or  
100 that any claims in such list are, in fact, Essential Claims.

101 The name "OASIS", is a trademark of OASIS, the owner and developer of this specification, and should  
102 be used only to refer to the organization and its official outputs. OASIS welcomes reference to, and  
103 implementation and use of, specifications, while reserving the right to enforce its marks against  
104 misleading uses. Please see <http://www.oasis-open.org/who/trademark.php> for above guidance.

105

---

# 106 Table of Contents

|     |   |    |
|-----|---|----|
| 107 | Notices .....   | 3  |
| 108 | Table of Contents .....   | 4  |
| 109 | 1 Introduction .....  | 9  |
| 110 | 1.1 Terminology .....   | 9  |
| 111 | 1.2 Purpose .....   | 9  |
| 112 | 1.3 Scope .....   | 10 |
| 113 | 1.4 Audience .....  | 10 |
| 114 | 1.5 How to Read this Document .....                             | 10 |
| 115 | 1.6 Motivation .....  | 10 |
| 116 | 1.7 Requirements .....  | 11 |
| 117 | 1.8 XML Namespaces .....  | 13 |
| 118 | 1.9 Notational Conventions .....                                | 13 |
| 119 | 1.10 General Document Conventions .....                         | 13 |
| 120 | 1.11 Diagram Conventions .....                                  | 13 |
| 121 | 1.12 Normative References .....                                 | 15 |
| 122 | 1.13 Non-Normative References .....                             | 15 |
| 123 | 2 Solution Deployment Descriptor Overview .....                 | 16 |
| 124 | 2.1 Package and Deployment Descriptors .....                    | 16 |
| 125 | 2.2 Topology .....  | 16 |
| 126 | 2.3 Content and Artifacts .....                                 | 16 |
| 127 | 2.4 Resulting and Changed Resources .....                       | 17 |
| 128 | 2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies ..... | 17 |
| 129 | 2.6 Constraints .....   | 18 |
| 130 | 2.7 Requirements .....  | 18 |
| 131 | 2.8 Conditions .....  | 18 |
| 132 | 2.9 Variables .....   | 18 |
| 133 | 3 Package Descriptor .....                                      | 19 |
| 134 | 3.1 PackageDescriptor .....                                     | 19 |
| 135 | 3.1.1 PackageDescriptor Property Summary .....                  | 19 |
| 136 | 3.1.2 PackageDescriptor Property Usage Notes .....              | 19 |
| 137 | 3.2 DescriptorInfoGroup .....                                   | 20 |
| 138 | 3.2.1 DescriptorInfoGroup Property Usage Notes .....            | 20 |
| 139 | 3.3 PackageIdentityType .....                                   | 22 |
| 140 | 3.3.1 PackageIdentityType Property Summary .....                | 22 |
| 141 | 3.3.2 PackageIdentityType Property Usage Notes .....            | 22 |
| 142 | 3.4 IdentityType .....  | 24 |
| 143 | 3.4.1 IdentityType Property Summary .....                       | 24 |
| 144 | 3.4.2 IdentityType Property Usage Notes .....                   | 25 |
| 145 | 3.5 MaintenanceInformationType .....                            | 26 |
| 146 | 3.5.1 MaintenanceInformationType Property Summary .....         | 26 |
| 147 | 3.5.2 MaintenanceInformationType Property Usage Notes .....     | 26 |
| 148 | 3.6 FixIdentityType .....                                       | 27 |
| 149 | 3.6.1 FixIdentityType Property Summary .....                    | 27 |

|     |   |    |
|-----|---|----|
| 150 | 3.6.2 FixIdentityType Property Usage Notes .....      | 27 |
| 151 | 3.7 BuildInformationType.....                         | 27 |
| 152 | 3.7.1 BuildInformationType Property Summary .....     | 28 |
| 153 | 3.7.2 BuildInformationType Property Usage Notes ..... | 28 |
| 154 | 3.8 ManufacturerType.....                             | 28 |
| 155 | 3.8.1 ManufacturerType Property Summary .....         | 28 |
| 156 | 3.8.2 ManufacturerType Property Usage Notes.....      | 28 |
| 157 | 3.9 LocationType .....                                | 29 |
| 158 | 3.9.1 LocationType Property Summary.....              | 29 |
| 159 | 3.9.2 LocationType Property Usage Notes .....         | 29 |
| 160 | 3.10 VersionType.....                                 | 29 |
| 161 | 3.11 ContentsType .....                               | 29 |
| 162 | 3.11.1 ContentsType Property Summary.....             | 29 |
| 163 | 3.11.2 ContentsType Property Usage Notes .....        | 30 |
| 164 | 3.12 ContentType .....                                | 30 |
| 165 | 3.12.1 ContentType Property Summary.....              | 30 |
| 166 | 3.12.2 ContentType Property Usage Notes .....         | 30 |
| 167 | 3.13 DigestInfoGroup.....                             | 31 |
| 168 | 3.13.1 DigestInfoGroup Property Usage Notes.....      | 31 |
| 169 | 4 Deployment Descriptor.....                          | 32 |
| 170 | 4.1 DeploymentDescriptor .....                        | 32 |
| 171 | 4.1.1 DeploymentDescriptor Property Summary.....      | 33 |
| 172 | 4.1.2 DeploymentDescriptor Property Usage Notes ..... | 33 |
| 173 | 4.2 Topology .....                                    | 34 |
| 174 | 4.2.1 TopologyType.....                               | 35 |
| 175 | 4.2.2 ResourceType .....                              | 36 |
| 176 | 4.2.3 PropertyType.....                               | 39 |
| 177 | 4.2.4 ResultingPropertyType.....                      | 39 |
| 178 | 4.3 Atomic Content Elements .....                     | 40 |
| 179 | 4.3.1 InstallableUnitType.....                        | 41 |
| 180 | 4.3.2 ConfigurationUnitType.....                      | 44 |
| 181 | 4.3.3 ArtifactType .....                              | 46 |
| 182 | 4.3.4 InstallationArtifactsType .....                 | 49 |
| 183 | 4.3.5 ConfigurationArtifactsType .....                | 50 |
| 184 | 4.3.6 OperationListType.....                          | 50 |
| 185 | 4.3.7 OperationType.....                              | 50 |
| 186 | 4.3.8 ArgumentListType .....                          | 51 |
| 187 | 4.3.9 ArgumentType.....                               | 51 |
| 188 | 4.3.10 OutputVariableListType.....                    | 52 |
| 189 | 4.3.11 OutputVariableType .....                       | 53 |
| 190 | 4.3.12 AdditionalContentType .....                    | 53 |
| 191 | 4.3.13 SubstitutionType.....                          | 54 |
| 192 | 4.3.14 CompletionType .....                           | 55 |
| 193 | 4.4 Constraints.....                                  | 56 |
| 194 | 4.4.1 CapacityConstraintType.....                     | 57 |

|     |   |    |
|-----|---|----|
| 195 | 4.4.2 CapacityValueType .....                         | 58 |
| 196 | 4.4.3 ConsumptionConstraintType .....                 | 59 |
| 197 | 4.4.4 ConsumptionConstraintValueType .....            | 60 |
| 198 | 4.4.5 PropertyConstraintType .....                    | 61 |
| 199 | 4.4.6 PropertyValueListType .....                     | 61 |
| 200 | 4.4.7 VersionConstraintType .....                     | 62 |
| 201 | 4.4.8 VersionConstraintValueType .....                | 63 |
| 202 | 4.4.9 VersionValueType .....                          | 63 |
| 203 | 4.4.10 VersionRangeType .....                         | 64 |
| 204 | 4.4.11 MaxVersionType .....                           | 65 |
| 205 | 4.4.12 UniquenessConstraintType .....                 | 65 |
| 206 | 4.4.13 RelationshipConstraintType .....               | 66 |
| 207 | 4.5 Conditions .....                                  | 67 |
| 208 | 4.5.1 ConditionType .....                             | 67 |
| 209 | 4.5.2 AlternativeConditionalType .....                | 69 |
| 210 | 4.5.3 ConditionalResourceConstraintType .....         | 70 |
| 211 | 4.5.4 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType .....         | 72 |
| 212 | 4.6 Variables .....                                   | 73 |
| 213 | 4.6.1 VariableExpressionType .....                    | 73 |
| 214 | 4.6.2 BaseVariableType .....                          | 74 |
| 215 | 4.6.3 VariablesType .....                             | 75 |
| 216 | 4.6.4 ParametersType .....                            | 76 |
| 217 | 4.6.5 BaseParameterType .....                         | 77 |
| 218 | 4.6.6 IntegerParameterType .....                      | 78 |
| 219 | 4.6.7 BoundaryType .....                              | 79 |
| 220 | 4.6.8 StringParameterType .....                       | 80 |
| 221 | 4.6.9 StringCaseType .....                            | 81 |
| 222 | 4.6.10 BooleanParameterType .....                     | 81 |
| 223 | 4.6.11 URIPParameterType .....                        | 81 |
| 224 | 4.6.12 ResourcePropertyType .....                     | 82 |
| 225 | 4.6.13 DerivedVariableType .....                      | 83 |
| 226 | 4.6.14 ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType ..... | 83 |
| 227 | 4.7 Requirements .....                                | 84 |
| 228 | 4.7.1 RequirementsType .....                          | 84 |
| 229 | 4.7.2 RequirementType .....                           | 85 |
| 230 | 4.7.3 AlternativeRequirementType .....                | 87 |
| 231 | 4.7.4 ResourceConstraintGroup .....                   | 88 |
| 232 | 4.7.5 RequirementResourceConstraintType .....         | 90 |
| 233 | 4.7.6 InternalDependencyType .....                    | 91 |
| 234 | 4.7.7 DependencyType .....                            | 92 |
| 235 | 4.7.8 RequiredBaseType .....                          | 93 |
| 236 | 4.7.9 RequiredBaseConstraintType .....                | 94 |
| 237 | 4.7.10 AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType .....    | 96 |
| 238 | 4.8 Resulting and Changed Resources .....             | 97 |
| 239 | 4.8.1 ResultingResourceType .....                     | 97 |

|     |  |     |
|-----|--|-----|
| 240 | 4.8.2 ResultingChangeType .....            | 99  |
| 241 | 4.8.3 RelationshipType .....               | 101 |
| 242 | 4.9 Composite Content Elements .....       | 101 |
| 243 | 4.9.1 CompositeInstallableType .....       | 103 |
| 244 | 4.9.2 CompositeUnitType .....              | 106 |
| 245 | 4.10 Aggregation .....                     | 108 |
| 246 | 4.10.1 ReferencedPackageType .....         | 112 |
| 247 | 4.10.2 ResourceMapType .....               | 115 |
| 248 | 4.10.3 ResultingResourceMapType .....      | 116 |
| 249 | 4.10.4 ResultingChangeMapType .....        | 118 |
| 250 | 4.10.5 RequisitesType .....                | 119 |
| 251 | 4.11 Base Content .....                    | 120 |
| 252 | 4.11.1 BaseContentType .....               | 120 |
| 253 | 4.12 Content Selectability .....           | 121 |
| 254 | 4.12.1 SelectableContentType .....         | 121 |
| 255 | 4.12.2 GroupsType .....                    | 122 |
| 256 | 4.12.3 GroupType .....                     | 123 |
| 257 | 4.12.4 FeaturesType .....                  | 124 |
| 258 | 4.12.5 FeatureType .....                   | 125 |
| 259 | 4.12.6 NestedFeatureType .....             | 126 |
| 260 | 4.12.7 MultiplicityType .....              | 129 |
| 261 | 4.12.8 FeatureReferenceType .....          | 130 |
| 262 | 4.12.9 ContentElementReferenceType .....   | 130 |
| 263 | 4.12.10 PackageFeatureReferenceType .....  | 131 |
| 264 | 4.12.11 ConstrainedResourceType .....      | 131 |
| 265 | 4.12.12 MultiplicityConstraintType .....   | 132 |
| 266 | 4.12.13 RequiredContentSelectionType ..... | 132 |
| 267 | 4.12.14 ContentSelectionFeatureType .....  | 133 |
| 268 | 4.12.15 MultiSelectType .....              | 134 |
| 269 | 4.13 Localization .....                    | 134 |
| 270 | 4.13.1 LocalizationContentType .....       | 135 |
| 271 | 4.13.2 LocalizationUnitType .....          | 136 |
| 272 | 4.13.3 CompositeLocalizationUnitType ..... | 139 |
| 273 | 4.13.4 LanguageSelectionsType .....        | 142 |
| 274 | 4.13.5 OptionalLanguagesType .....         | 142 |
| 275 | 4.13.6 LanguagesType .....                 | 143 |
| 276 | 4.13.7 LanguageType .....                  | 143 |
| 277 | 4.13.8 LanguageSetType .....               | 144 |
| 278 | 4.14 Display Information .....             | 145 |
| 279 | 4.14.1 DescriptionGroup .....              | 145 |
| 280 | 4.14.2 DisplayElementGroup .....           | 145 |
| 281 | 4.14.3 DisplayTextType .....               | 146 |
| 282 | 5 Conformance .....                        | 147 |
| 283 | 5.1 General Conformance Statements .....   | 147 |
| 284 | 5.2 Conformance Levels .....               | 147 |

|     |  |     |
|-----|--|-----|
| 285 | 5.2.1 CL Capabilities .....                            | 147 |
| 286 | 5.2.2 Conformance Level Differences .....              | 148 |
| 287 | 5.3 Profiles .....                                     | 150 |
| 288 | 5.3.1 Profile Creation.....                            | 150 |
| 289 | 5.3.2 Profile Publication.....                         | 150 |
| 290 | 5.3.3 Profile Applicability .....                      | 151 |
| 291 | 5.4 Compatibility Statements .....                     | 151 |
| 292 | 5.5 Conformance Clause .....                           | 151 |
| 293 | 5.5.1 Conformance for Users of This Specification..... | 151 |
| 294 | 5.5.2 Conformance for This Specification Itself.....   | 151 |
| 295 | A. Schema File List.....                               | 153 |
| 296 | B. Acknowledgements .....                              | 154 |
| 297 |  |     |

---

## 298 1 Introduction

299 The *Solution Deployment Descriptor* (SDD) specification defines a standard, in the form of a schema for  
300 XML documents, called *Solution Deployment Descriptors*, or *SDDs*. SDDs define metadata that describes  
301 the packaging and deployment characteristics of resources that are relevant for their lifecycle  
302 management, including creation, configuration and maintenance.

### 303 A.1 Terminology

304 The following terms are used in this specification in a specialized sense that might differ from definitions  
305 elsewhere.

#### 306 **Artifact**

307 Zero or more files and/or metadata used to perform a *deployment lifecycle* operation on a  
308 *resource*.

#### 309 **Deployment lifecycle**

310 The stages marking maturation of a *solution*: develop, package, integrate, manufacture, install,  
311 configure, evaluate, deploy into production, upgrade and/or update, uninstall.

#### 312 **Host Resource**

313 A resource that provides the execution environment for another resource.

#### 314 **Package**

315 A set of artifacts used to perform *deployment lifecycle* operations on a group of related resources  
316 that make up a solution.

#### 317 **Resource**

318 A particular element of a computing environment, such as a computer system, an operating  
319 system, a Web server, a software application, or a complex *solution*.

#### 320 **Solution**

321 One or more interrelated *resources* on which *deployment lifecycle* operations can be performed.

#### 322 **Target Resource**

323 A resource that processes *artifacts* to perform *deployment lifecycle* operations on another  
324 resource. The *host resource* often serves as the target resource.

#### 325 **Topology**

326 The physical or logical layout of a *solution's resources*.

#### 327 **Update (n.)**

328 A *package* that replaces a limited set of the *resources* in a *solution* instance. An update does not  
329 require migration.

#### 330 **Upgrade (n.)**

331 A *package* that replaces all, or a significant portion of, the *resources* used in a *solution*. An  
332 upgrade might or might not require migration.

### 333 1.1 Purpose

334 The purpose of this document is to provide the normative specification of the SDD, including concepts,  
335 structure, syntax, semantics and usage.

## 336 1.2 Scope

337 This document is the specification for the SDD. It consists of both normative and non-normative prose,  
338 diagrams, schema and examples. The document is intended to facilitate an understanding of the SDD  
339 concepts, structure, syntax, semantics and usage. This document is not intended to be a tutorial.

340 This document is the full SDD specification, but it also is augmented with other documents produced by  
341 the SDD TC, including the SDD XML Schema and Examples (see Appendix [A]), **[SDDP]**, **[SDDSP]** and  
342 the set of SDD profiles (see section [5.3]), as well as documents produced by others (see section [5.3.1]).

## 343 1.3 Audience

344 This document is intended to assist those who require an understanding of the nature and details of the  
345 SDD. This includes architects, developers, solution integrators and service/support personnel who  
346 generate, consume, or otherwise use SDDs, as well as those who develop tooling and applications for  
347 constructing and deploying SDDs.

## 348 1.4 How to Read this Document

349 The various audiences of this specification might have different objectives and purposes when reading  
350 the document. You might wish to generally understand the SDD, or learn the details of the SDD to create  
351 or consume SDDs, or use the document as a reference.

- 352 ▪ If your purpose is to understand the major capabilities and characteristics of the SDD and how they fit  
353 together, start by reading the Introductions to the major sections: [3], [4] and [4.1]–[4.14].
- 354 ▪ If your purpose is to understand the major elements of the SDD and how they work together to  
355 accomplish the goals of this specification, read in addition to the above, the introductions to each of  
356 the type sections [3.1]–[3.13] and the type subsections within sections [4.2]–[4.14].
- 357 ▪ If your purpose is to understand the syntax of the SDD, look at the tables in each of the Property  
358 Summary sections.
- 359 ▪ If your purpose is to understand the semantics of the elements and attributes of the SDD, read the  
360 Property Usage Notes sections.
- 361 ▪ If your purpose is to understand only the package descriptor, subset the above suggestions to focus  
362 on the sub-sections within section [3].
- 363 ▪ If your purpose is to understand only the deployment descriptor, subset the above suggestions to  
364 focus on the sub-sections within section [4].

## 365 1.5 Motivation

366 The motivation for producing this specification is best expressed in this excerpt from the SDD Technical  
367 Committee's charter:

368 *Deployment and lifecycle management of a set of interrelated software, hereinafter referred to as*  
369 *a solution, is a predominantly manual operation because there is currently no standardized way*  
370 *to express installation packaging for a multi-platform environment. Each hosting platform or*  
371 *operating system has its own format for expressing packaging of a single installable unit but,*  
372 *even on these homogeneous platforms, there is no standardized way to combine packages into a*  
373 *single aggregated unit without significant re-creation of the dependency and installation*  
374 *instructions. The problem is compounded when the solution is to be deployed across multiple,*  
375 *heterogeneous, platforms. A standard for describing the packaging and mechanism to express*  
376 *dependencies and various lifecycle management operations within the package would alleviate*  
377 *these problems and subsequently enable automation of these highly manual and error-prone*  
378 *tasks.*

379 *The purpose of this Technical Committee is to define XML schema to describe the characteristics*  
380 *of an installable unit (IU) of software that are relevant for core aspects of its deployment,*  
381 *configuration and maintenance. This document will be referred to as the Solution Deployment*  
382 *Descriptor (SDD).*

383 *SDDs will benefit member companies and the industry in general by providing a consistent model*  
384 *and semantics to address the needs of all aspects of the IT industry dealing with software*  
385 *deployment, configuration and lifecycle management. The benefits of this work include:*

- 386 • *ability to describe software solution packages for both single and multi-platform*  
387 *heterogeneous environments.*
- 388 • *ability to describe software solution packages independent of the software installation*  
389 *technology or supplier.*
- 390 • *ability to provide information necessary to permit full lifecycle maintenance of software*  
391 *solutions.*

## 392 **1.6 Requirements**

393 A summary of requirements satisfied by this SDD specification follows. Detailed requirements that support  
394 approved use cases are available at the SDD TC Web page, <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/sdd>.

### 395 **Solution lifecycle management**

396 The SDD must provide information to support the complete lifecycle of a software solution.  
397 Certain key requirements are applicable to all phases of deployment lifecycle operation: planning,  
398 installation, configuration, maintenance, upgrade, migration and uninstallation.

### 399 **Solution requirements for environment to perform lifecycle** 400 **management tasks**

401 A deployment lifecycle operation on a target resource is often dependent on a certain set of  
402 conditions that must exist on the target. This set of pre-existing conditions is known as the  
403 *environment*. If successful deployment lifecycle operations are dependent on a certain set of pre-  
404 existing conditions (environment), then the SDD specification must support the ability to specify  
405 the required environment.

### 406 **Projected changes to environment**

407 The SDD specification must support the definition of environment changes that become effective  
408 once the lifecycle operation is complete.

### 409 **Solution instance variability**

410 The SDD specification must support the definition of the appropriate information for a runtime to  
411 vary the ways in which the solution can be deployed. This information is also needed to enable an  
412 integrator to control the variability according to the needs of their higher-level solution.

413 This variability includes the information to control (1) the subset of capability that can be  
414 deployed; (2) setting the initial configuration of the solution; and (3) varying the topology in which  
415 the solution can be deployed.

### 416 **Solution composition**

417 The SDD specification must support the ability for the author to compose solution packages from  
418 multiple components, products, or solutions.

### 419 **Solution and packaging identity**

420 The SDD specification must support the definition of identity information for the solution package,  
421 resources that make up the solution, and solution itself to support use cases including asset  
422 management, license management, support/update entitlement, component reuse during  
423 development, reports and queries from a package repository, identifying associated  
424 documentation, solution lifecycle management, traceability to build/development environment and  
425 problem management systems, correlation into the hosting environment, component reuse, and  
426 maintenance history. Also, the SDD specification must support the definition of the identity  
427 description information used by a runtime to assist a user in making correct decisions about  
428 solution installation. The SDD specification must support the definition of the information that  
429 uniquely identifies the SDD descriptor and the ability to identify the version of the SDD. The  
430 customer should be able to identify the solution packages with consistent names.

- 431 **Physical packaging**
- 432 Physical packaging information should be contained in a separate media descriptor. The
- 433 deployment model for a solution should be decoupled from the details of physical packaging. The
- 434 format and structure of the physical packaging is outside the scope of SDD v1.0.
- 435 **Interoperability with existing software packaging technologies**
- 436 The SDD specification must support the ability for the author to compose solutions from existing
- 437 software packages that do not have an SDD. This means that the SDD should be able to
- 438 describe existing software packages.
- 439 **Conform to external standards**
- 440 The SDD specification must provide for alternative descriptive text to be defined for any images,
- 441 animations, or audio information contained in the descriptor.
- 442 **Decision support**
- 443 Requirements to perform lifecycle management operations within various target environments
- 444 may not be satisfied in the target's current state but might be able to be satisfied with additional
- 445 operations. For example, successful deployment of a set of Java™<sup>1</sup> components is dependent on
- 446 the existence of a Java runtime environment that is not included with the solution. The SDD
- 447 should have the ability to specify information that will assist lifecycle management tools in
- 448 planning for, accessing and installing these external requirements.
- 449 **Specification organization**
- 450 The SDD specification must provide the semantic behavior expected by producers and
- 451 consumers of SDDs. This information allows for the producers to ensure that the consumers of
- 452 their SDDs will provide the support intended.
- 453 **Solution metadata**
- 454 The SDD metadata may not encompass all of the information about the solution in all contexts in
- 455 which the solution can be deployed. Additional metadata that is outside of the scope of the SDD
- 456 is available at the SDD TC Web page, <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/sdd>.
- 457 **Globalization**
- 458 For all content in the SDD that would be displayed to a user, the specification must support the
- 459 definition of strings for multiple locales; for example, this content must be localizable.
- 460 **Align with other standards bodies**
- 461 Satisfying all the requirements listed here calls for extensive standardization in specific areas.
- 462 The requirements should thus be aligned with other appropriate standards bodies. The SDD
- 463 reuses existing OASIS and other standards where appropriate and aligns with other standards
- 464 bodies (for example, **[OGF-ACS]**) that are developing standards in the same domain as SDD.

---

<sup>1</sup> Java is a trademark or registered trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

## 465 1.7 XML Namespaces

466 The XML namespaces defined as part of this specification are:

- 467 ▪ **sdd-pd**: stands for the package descriptor portion of the SDD namespace.
- 468 ▪ **sdd-dd**: stands for the deployment descriptor portion of the SDD namespace.
- 469 ▪ **sdd-common**: stands for the common (shared) types, elements and groups of the SDD namespace.

470 For XML namespaces not defined as part of this specification, conventional XML namespace prefixes are  
471 used as follows, regardless of whether a namespace declaration is present in the example:

- 472 ▪ The prefix **xsd**: stands for the W3C XML Schema namespace [**XSD**].
- 473 ▪ The prefix **ds**: stands for the digital signature namespace [**XMLDSIG-CORE**].

## 474 1.8 Notational Conventions

475 Everything in the specification, including the Appendices, is considered normative except for the abstract,  
476 examples and any sections or other material marked as non-normative.

477 The keywords “MUST”, “MUST NOT”, “REQUIRED”, “SHALL”, “SHALL NOT”, “SHOULD”, “SHOULD  
478 NOT”, “RECOMMENDED”, “MAY” and “OPTIONAL” in this document are to be interpreted as described  
479 in [**RFC2119**].

480 These keywords are capitalized when used unambiguously to specify requirements or application  
481 features and behavior. When these words are not capitalized, they are meant in their natural-language  
482 sense.

## 483 1.9 General Document Conventions

484 In describing XML elements and attributes of the SDD schema, this document contains many cross-  
485 references. Such references appear as the referenced section number inside square brackets, for  
486 example, [4.5]. In electronic versions of this specification, the cross-references can act as links the target  
487 section.

488 The following property naming convention is used in the schema: Element and type names begin with an  
489 uppercase letter and attribute names begin with a lowercase letter.

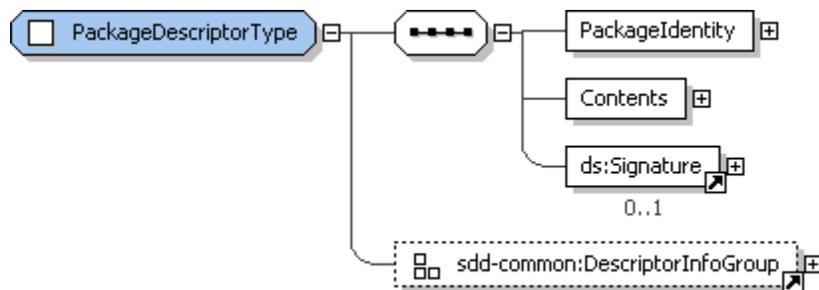
490 Italics are used to identify element and attribute names, type names and enumerated values defined by  
491 an SDD type.

492 In describing the XML schema, each section typically contains the following subsections:

- 493 ▪ A diagram illustrating the element, group, or type that is specified in the section.
- 494 ▪ Property Summary: A table listing the schema elements and attributes, along with the data type,  
495 cardinality and description for each one.  
496 When specified, extension points are listed in the tables with no name and a type of `xsd:any` for  
497 element extensions and `xsd:anyAttribute` for attribute extensions. Cardinality is also provided.  
498 When a type is an extension of another type, the extended type is listed in the table with no name and  
499 prefixed with [**extends**]. The extended type’s properties can be referenced from the appropriate  
500 section listed in the description column.  
501 When the schema specifies a default or fixed attribute value, that value is prefixed with two asterisks,  
502 as in **\*\*default value=“true”**.
- 503 ▪ Property Usage Notes: A list of the elements and attributes, along with more detailed prose  
504 descriptions of the properties and how they fit into the schema as a whole.
- 505 ▪ Not all sections contain every one of the preceding subsections.

## 506 1.10 Diagram Conventions

507 Sections 3 and 4 of this specification contain diagrams that illustrate the structure of elements, data types  
508 and groups used throughout the SDD schema. Figure 1 is an example of this type of diagram.



509  
510

**Figure 1: Sample XML structure diagram.**

511 Elements are represented by the element name inside a rectangle. A rectangle with a solid border  
512 denotes an element.

513 Where appropriate, the cardinality of an element is indicated by a rectangle with the cardinality listed  
514 underneath, using the form “*min..max*”. For example, “1..∞” indicates a minimum of one occurrence of the  
515 element and an unbounded upper limit:



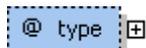
516

517 References to global elements are denoted by a small arrow in the lower right corner of the element’s  
518 rectangle:



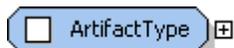
519

520 Attributes are denoted by a “@” symbol followed by the attribute name, inside a dashed rectangle.



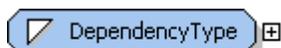
521

522 Complex types are denoted by a rectangle with all the corners truncated and a white square followed by  
523 the element name:



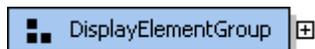
524

525 Simple types are denoted by a rectangle with all the corners truncated and a white triangle followed by  
526 the element name:



527

528 Groups are denoted by a rectangle with three small squares followed by the group name: black squares  
529 and a solid rectangle indicate element groups and white squares with a dashed rectangle indicate  
530 attribute groups:

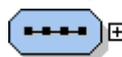


531

532 A plus sign on the right border of a component indicates hidden child elements or attributes. When  
533 hidden, the child elements are usually described in a separate section.

534 There are two connectors (or compositors) used in the SDD schema diagrams to combine elements:

- 535 ▪ A sequence of elements is indicated by the following symbol:



- 536 ▪ A choice among elements is indicated by the following symbol:



537 A large yellow box indicates a data type that is referenced.

538 Blue shading appearing in a figure has no significance; it simply indicates that a component was currently  
539 selected in the XML editor.

540 The XSD schema figures were created with <oXygen/>.

## 541 1.11 Normative References

- 542     **[CL2\_Schema]**     Solution Deployment Descriptor Schema  
543                     See Appendix [A] for location.
- 544     **[CONFORM]**     OASIS, *OASIS Conformance Requirements for Specifications 1.0*,  
545                     [http://www.oasis-](http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/305/conformance_requirements-v1.pdf)  
546                     [open.org/committees/download.php/305/conformance\\_requirements-v1.pdf](http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/305/conformance_requirements-v1.pdf).
- 547     **[IANA-CHARSET]** Internet Assigned Numbers Authority, *Character Sets*,  
548                     <http://www.iana.org/assignments/character-sets>, modified December 2006.
- 549     **[IETF-UUID]**     Internet Engineering Task Force Draft Specification,  
550                     <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4122.txt>.
- 551     **[ISO639.2]**     Library of Congress, *Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages*,  
552                     <http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/englangn.html>.
- 553     **[ISO3166]**     International Organization for Standardization, *English Country Names and Code*  
554                     *Elements*, [http://www.iso.ch/iso/en/prods-services/iso3166ma/02iso-3166-code-](http://www.iso.ch/iso/en/prods-services/iso3166ma/02iso-3166-code-lists/list-en1.html)  
555                     [lists/list-en1.html](http://www.iso.ch/iso/en/prods-services/iso3166ma/02iso-3166-code-lists/list-en1.html).
- 556     **[RFC2119]**     S. Bradner, *Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels*,  
557                     <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt>, IETF RFC 2119, March 1997.
- 558     **[RFC3066]**     H. Alvestrand, ed. *RFC 3066: Tags for the Identification of Languages* 1995,  
559                     <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3066.txt>.
- 560     **[UNIT]**         Bureau International des Poids et Mesures, <http://www.bipm.fr>.
- 561     **[XMLDSIG-CORE]** Bartel et al., *XML-Signature Syntax and Processing*,  
562                     <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlsig-core/>, W3C Recommendation, February 2002.
- 563     **[XSD]**         W3C Schema Working Group, *XML Schema*, [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-1/)  
564                     [1/](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-1/), W3C Recommendation, October 2004.
- 565

## 566 1.12 Non-Normative References

- 567     **[CL1\_Schema]**     Solution Deployment Descriptor Conformance Level 1 Schema  
568                     See Appendix [A] for location.
- 569     **[CIM]**         Distributed Management Task Force, Inc., Common Information Model (CIM)  
570                     <http://www.dmtf.org/standards/cim/>.
- 571     **[OGF-ACS]**     Open Grid Forum, Application Contents Service WG (ACS-WG),  
572                     [http://www.ogf.org/gf/group\\_info/view.php?group=acs-wg](http://www.ogf.org/gf/group_info/view.php?group=acs-wg).
- 573     **[SDDP]**         Solution Deployment Descriptor Primer  
574                     <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-primer-v1.0.doc>  
575                     <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-primer-v1.0.pdf>  
576                     <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-primer-v1.0.html>
- 577     **[SDDSP]**     Solution Deployment Descriptor Starter Profile  
578                     <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-starter-profile-v1.0.doc>  
579                     <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-starter-profile-v1.0.pdf>  
580                     <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-starter-profile-v1.0.html>  
581  
582  
583

584

---

## 2 Solution Deployment Descriptor Overview

585

### 2.1 Package and Deployment Descriptors

586  
587  
588  
589  
590  
591

The package descriptor defines package content which includes artifacts whose processing results in deployment of the software package. The deployment descriptor defines metadata associated with those artifacts. The SDD package descriptor defines the package identity, the package content and various other attributes of the package. Each SDD consists of exactly one deployment descriptor and one package descriptor. The deployment descriptor is where the topology, selectability, inputs, requirements and conditions of the deployment are described.

592

### 2.2 Topology

593  
594

The SDD's topology describes all the resources that may be required, created or modified when any of the deployment operations supported by the SDD are performed.

595  
596  
597  
598  
599  
600

Primary identifying characteristics of the resources can be defined in topology. The topology includes identification of hosts—hosted by relationships between resources. It is usual that only a subset of the resources described in topology will play a role in any particular deployment. This is determined by the selection of content elements for the particular deployment. The resources that are required, created or modified by the content elements in scope for the deployment are the ones that will participate in the deployment and so will be associated with resources in the deployment environment.

601  
602  
603

At deployment time, definitions of the resources that participate in that particular deployment are associated with actual resource instances in the deployment environment. The mechanism for associating resource definitions with resource instances is not defined by the SDD.

604  
605

The only resource definitions in the SDD are in topology. All other mention of resources in the SDD are references to the resource definitions in the topology.

606

### 2.3 Content and Artifacts

607  
608  
609

Metadata throughout the deployment descriptor is associated with package content in the definition of atomic content elements. The atomic content elements are *InstallableUnit*, *ConfigurationUnit* and *LocalizationUnit*. These are the only content elements that define *Artifacts* elements.

610  
611  
612  
613  
614  
615  
616  
617

Artifact elements identify an artifact file or set of files defined in package content whose processing will perform all or a portion of the deployment for a particular deployment lifecycle operation. Artifact elements define the inputs and outputs, substitution values and types associated with the artifact files. The content element's target resource, identified by *targetResourceRef*, processes the artifact files with the defined inputs to perform deployment operations. Examples of artifact types include zip files, rpm files and executable install files. Artifact types are not defined by this specification. The artifact types defined in the SDD need to be understood by software that processes the SDD. *Profiles* are used to communicate the artifact types that an implementation is capable of processing [5.3].

618  
619  
620

Composite content elements organize the content of an SDD but do not define artifacts used to deploy SDD content. There are three types of composite content elements: *CompositeInstallable*, *CompositeUnit* and *CompositeLocalizationUnit*.

621  
622  
623  
624  
625  
626

*CompositeInstallable* is used any time that more than one content element is defined in support of one operation on the package; any time aggregation of SDDs is needed; or any time the package includes selectable content. *CompositeInstallable* is the root of a content hierarchy that supports a single deployment lifecycle operation. It can define a base content hierarchy, a localization content hierarchy and a selectable content hierarchy that includes selection criteria. One SDD can have more than one *CompositeInstallable*—each supporting a different operation.

627  
628

*CompositeUnit* is used to organize content elements within the base or selectable content hierarchies. *CompositeUnits* can define *InstallableUnits*, *ConfigurationUnits*, *ContainedPackages* and other

629 *CompositeUnits*. Requirements, conditions and variables that are common to all content elements defined  
630 by the *CompositeUnit* can be defined in the *CompositeUnit* to avoid repetition. Within the selectable  
631 content hierarchy, a *CompositeUnit* can provide an efficient means for selection of a set of related content  
632 elements by a *feature*.

633 *CompositeLocalizationUnit* serves the same purposes as *CompositeUnit* within the *LocalizatonContent*  
634 hierarchy.

635 SDD packages can aggregate other SDD packages. Metadata about the aggregation is defined in  
636 *ContainedPackage*, *ContainedLocalizationPackage* and *Requisite* elements. *ContainedPackage*  
637 elements are a content element that can be defined anywhere in the base and selectable content  
638 hierarchies. *ContainedLocalizationPackages* are content elements that can be defined in the localization  
639 content hierarchy. *Requisites* are packages that can be deployed, if necessary, to satisfy requirements in  
640 the aggregating SDD. They are not content of the SDD package. The type of all three of these elements  
641 is *ReferencedPackageType*. The term “referenced package” is used in this specification when referring to  
642 these elements as a group. The term “referenced SDD” is used when referring to any aggregated SDD.

643 Each referenced package element can further constrain the deployment of the referenced SDD by  
644 defining additional requirements; by mapping resources defined in the aggregating SDD to those defined  
645 in the referenced SDD; and by determining feature selections for deployment of the referenced SDD.

## 646 **2.4 Resulting and Changed Resources**

647 Deployment of an SDD package creates or modifies software resources. These resources are included in  
648 the topology definition and described in more detail in *ResultingResource* and *ResultingChange*  
649 elements.

650 The SDD author can choose to model resulting and modified resources at a very granular level, at a very  
651 coarse level; at any level in between, or not at all. An example of modeling resulting resources at a  
652 granular level would be modeling every file created by the deployment as a resulting resource. An  
653 example of modeling resulting resources at a very coarse level would be modeling the software product  
654 created by deployment as a single resulting resource. The choice depends on the needs of the solution  
655 deployment. If a resource is not modeled in the SDD, no requirements can be expressed on it, no  
656 conditions can be based on it and no variables can be set from values of its properties. It cannot play any  
657 of the roles described for resources in the *ResourceType* section of this document [4.2.2].

## 658 **2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies**

659 Each *CompositeInstallable* element can define three types of content hierarchies. Base content is the  
660 default content for the deployment lifecycle operation associated with the *CompositeInstallable*. This is  
661 content that will be deployed whenever the associated operation is performed on the SDD package. Base  
662 content may be conditioned on characteristics of the deployment environment but it is not selectable by  
663 the deployer.

664 The SDD author can define selectable subsets of optional content in the selectable content hierarchy.  
665 The selection criteria include features and groups of features that select content from the selectable  
666 content hierarchy. Selectability, as used in the SDD, is a characteristic of the deployment lifecycle  
667 operation and the package. For example, the decision to provide selectability for one operation in one  
668 package has no semantic relationship to the selectability provided in another package related to the same  
669 software. It also has no semantic relationship to the selectability provided for a different operation within  
670 the same package.

671 Localization content is the third type of content hierarchy. Localization refers to enabling a particular piece  
672 of software for support for one or more languages. Anything that needs to be deployed to provide support  
673 for a particular language in that software is considered localization content. Translated materials are a  
674 primary, but not the only, example of localization content.

675 Localization content is similar in many ways to other content, but there are important differences in how  
676 localization content is selected for deployment that lead to the need for a separate content hierarchy and  
677 separate types. There are two criteria for determining that localization content is in scope for a particular  
678 deployment.

- 679     ▪ The first criterion has to do with the language or languages supported by the localization content. At  
680     least one of the languages must be in scope for the content to be selected.
- 681     ▪ The second criterion has to do with the availability of the resources to be localized—the localization  
682     base. The localization base may be a resource deployed by base or selectable content, or it may be  
683     a resource previously deployed and found in the deployment environment.

## 684    **2.6 Constraints**

685    The SDD author needs to communicate constraints on resources for a variety of purposes.

- 686    • Some constraints must be met for the requirements of a content element to be met.
- 687    • Other constraints must be met for a resource to serve as the required base for an update.
- 688    • Still others must be met to satisfy a condition that determines the applicability of a content element or  
689    completion action.

690    The Constraint types are:

- 691       ▪ *CapacityConstraint*
- 692       ▪ *ConsumptionConstraint*
- 693       ▪ *PropertyConstraint*
- 694       ▪ *VersionConstraint*
- 695       ▪ *UniquenessConstraint*
- 696       ▪ *RelationshipConstraint*

## 697    **2.7 Requirements**

698    Requirements are defined by content elements. A requirement consists of resource constraints that the  
699    SDD author states MUST be met prior to successful deployment or use of the software described by the  
700    SDD package. Each requirement definition lists one or more deployment lifecycle operations to which the  
701    requirement applies. When the requirement is specified in an atomic content element, the operation  
702    associates the requirement with artifacts within the atomic content element

703    When a requirement can be satisfied in more than one way, alternatives can be defined within a  
704    requirement. A requirement is considered met when any one of the alternatives is satisfied.

## 705    **2.8 Conditions**

706    Conditions are expressed on characteristics of resources in the deployment environment. Conditions are  
707    used to indicate when particular elements of the SDD are applicable, or when they should be ignored.  
708    Conditions are not requirements. Failure to satisfy a condition does not indicate a failure; it simply means  
709    the conditioned element should be ignored. Conditions are used to:

- 710       ▪ determine if a content element is applicable
- 711       ▪ choose from among values for a variable
- 712       ▪ determine when a feature is applicable
- 713       ▪ determine when a particular result is applicable
- 714       ▪ determine if a particular completion action is necessary.

715    Because conditions are always based on the characteristics of resources, they are expressed using  
716    resource constraints.

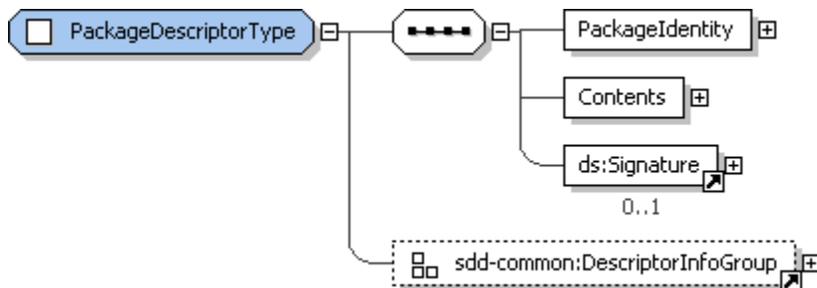
## 717    **2.9 Variables**

718    Variables provide a way to associate user inputs, resource property values, fixed strings and values  
719    derived from these with input arguments for artifacts and with constraints on resources.

## 720 3 Package Descriptor

721 A package descriptor is an XML document that provides information about the identity and the contents of  
 722 a software package. A software package is a bundle of one or several content elements that deploy or  
 723 remove computer software; add features to existing software; or apply maintenance to existing software.  
 724 Each package descriptor is associated with a deployment descriptor.

### 725 3.1 PackageDescriptor



726  
 727 **Figure 2: PackageDescriptor structure.**

728 The root element of a package descriptor XML document is *PackageDescriptor*. *PackageDescriptor*  
 729 includes elements that describe the package identity and the contents that make up the package. The  
 730 *PackageDescriptor* includes the associated deployment descriptor XML document by defining a *Content*  
 731 element with a *purpose* attribute set to *deploymentDescriptor*.

### 732 3.1.1 PackageDescriptor Property Summary

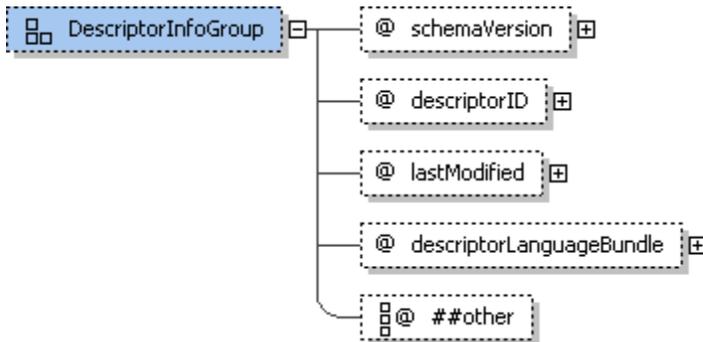
| Name                     | Data Type           | *    | Description   |
|--------------------------|---------------------|------|---|
| PackageIdentity          | PackageIdentityType | 1    | Human-understandable identity information for the software package.   |
| Contents                 | ContentsType        | 1    | A list of package contents.   |
| ds:Signature             | ds:SignatureType    | 0..1 | A signature for the package descriptor.   |
| schemaVersion            | xsd:string          | 1    | The descriptor complies with this version of the Solution Deployment Descriptor Specification.<br>**fixed value="1.0" |
| descriptorID             | UUIDType            | 1    | Identifier of a particular package's descriptor.  |
| lastModified             | xsd:dateTime        | 1    | The time the descriptor was last modified.  |
| descriptorLanguageBundle | xsd:token           | 0..1 | The root name of language bundle files containing translations for display text elements in the PackageDescriptor.    |
|                          | xsd:anyAttribute    | 0..* |   |

### 733 3.1.2 PackageDescriptor Property Usage Notes

- 734 ▪ **PackageIdentity:** The *PackageIdentity* element provides identity information about the software  
 735 package that can be used by the consumer of the package for deployment planning or aggregation of  
 736 the package into a larger solution.  
 737 See the *PackageIdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.3].

- 738 ▪ **Contents:** The *Contents* element defines a list of one or more *Content* elements describing all the  
739 files that are part of the package. All files in the package **MUST** be defined in *Contents*.  
740 See the *ContentsType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.11].
- 741 ▪ **ds:Signature:** The package descriptor and each file in the package **MAY** be digitally signed. It is  
742 RECOMMENDED that they be digitally signed by using an XML-Signature [XMLDSIG-CORE].  
743 The signature element is an enveloped signature over the SDD package. Note that each *Content*  
744 element included in the package is digitally signed indirectly via this digest. Files can also be  
745 individually signed in the *Content* element.
- 746 ▪ **schemaVersion, descriptorID, lastModified, descriptorLanguageBundle:** See the  
747 *DescriptorInfoGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [3.2].

## 748 3.2 DescriptorInfoGroup



749  
750 **Figure 3: DescriptorInfoGroup structure.**

751 The attributes defined by *DescriptorInfoGroup* are included in both *PackageDescriptor* and  
752 *DeploymentDescriptor*.

### 753 3.2.1 DescriptorInfoGroup Property Usage Notes

- 754 ▪ **schemaVersion:** The *schemaVersion* attribute identifies the Solution Deployment Descriptor  
755 specification version to which the descriptor conforms. It **MUST** have a fixed value of “1.0”.
- 756 ▪ **descriptorID:** The *descriptorID* attribute, combined with the *lastModified* attribute value, provides a  
757 unique identifier for the descriptor. The *descriptorID* value **MUST** be unique within the scope of use of  
758 the deployment descriptor or package descriptor. The *descriptorID* attribute is an instance of  
759 *UUIDType*, which is based on `xsd:hexBinary` with length 16. This enables use of a 128-bit UUID  
760 [IETF-UUID]. The *descriptorID* value supports descriptor updates by allowing updated descriptors to  
761 be correctly associated with an earlier version of the same descriptor.

762 For example, if a descriptor contains errors, it may be replaced by an error-free version using the  
763 same *descriptorID* value but a different *lastModified* value.

- 764 ▪ **lastModified:** The *lastModified* value can be used to differentiate between different versions of the  
765 same descriptor, for example, the descriptor for one particular package. Comparison of *lastModified*  
766 values can be used to determine which descriptor is newer.

767 The *lastModified* attribute **MUST** be defined as a value that conforms to the `xsd:dateTime` type as  
768 defined in [XSD] and **MUST** match the following lexical representation: `[ - ]CCYY-MM-  
769 DDThh:mm:ss [ Z | ( + | - )hh:mm ]`. This is a combination of a complete date and time of day, where  
770 the time zone can be specified as Z (UTC) or (+|-)hh:mm.

771 For example, the following are valid values for the *lastModified* attribute:

- 772 ▪ 2001-10-26T21:32:52
- 773 ▪ 2001-10-26T21:32:52+02:00
- 774 ▪ 2001-10-26T19:32:52Z

775           ▪ 2001-10-26T19:32:52+00:00

776           ▪ -2001-10-26T21:32:52

777           ▪ 2001-10-26T21:32:52.12679

778           However, the following values would be invalid:

779           ▪ 2001-10-26

780           ▪ 2001-10-26T21:32

781           ▪ 01-10-26T21:32

782           ▪ 2001-10-26T25:32:52+02:00

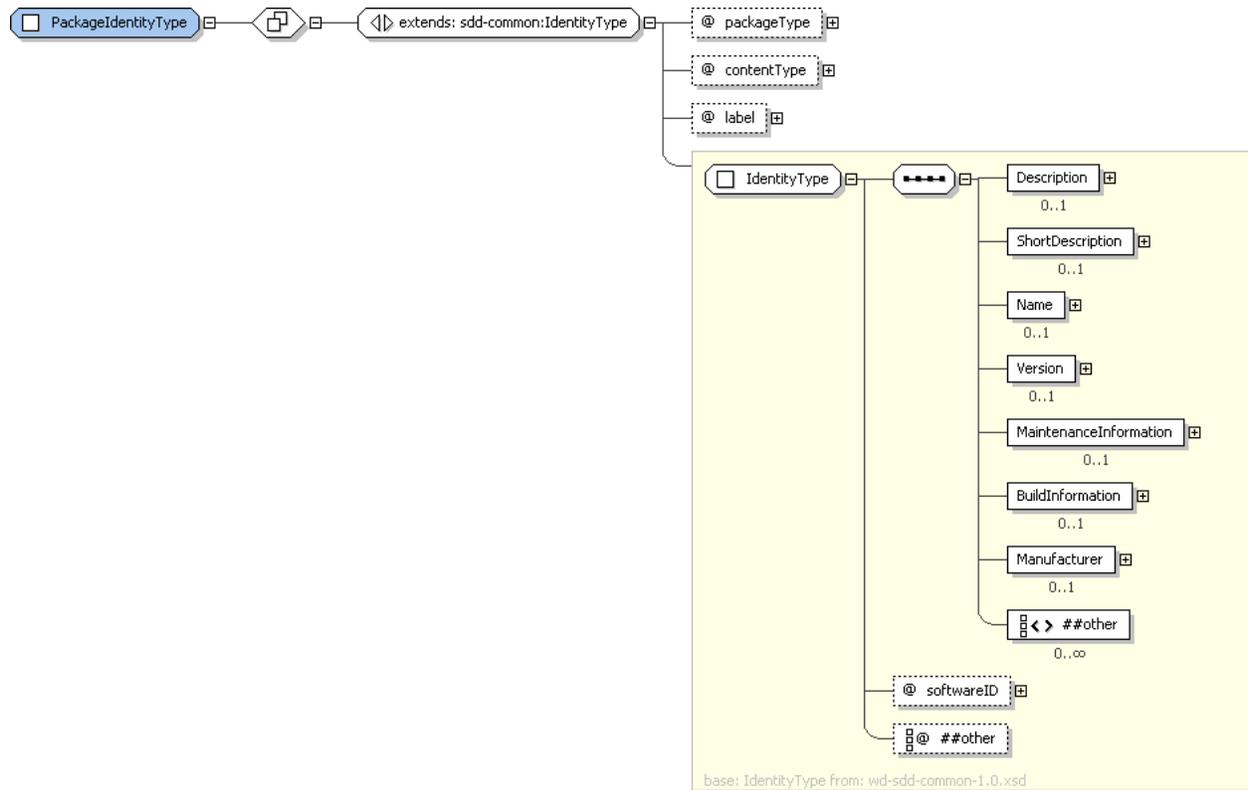
783           The first three invalid examples do not specify all the required parts, and the fourth includes an  
784           out of range hours part, “25”.

785   ▪ **descriptorLanguageBundle**: Language translations for elements of *DisplayTextType* in the  
786    descriptor MAY be included in the solution package. Note that these are not translations for the  
787    software deployed by the package, but rather translations only for the text in the descriptors  
788    themselves. The root name of the files containing these translations can be specified in the  
789    *descriptorLanguageBundle* attribute, which is an instance of `xsd:token`. Language bundles are  
790    associated with specific locales at run time using Java-style resource bundle resolution; that is, the  
791    bundle file names SHOULD take the form *languageBundle\_locale*, where *locale* consists of optional  
792    language, location (country) and variant codes, separated by an underscore character. Language  
793    codes consist of two lowercase letters [ISO639.2] and location codes consist of two uppercase letters  
794    [ISO3166].

795           For example, “SampleStrings\_en\_US” refers to the United States English version of the  
796           SampleStrings bundle and “SampleStrings\_ja” identifies the Japanese version of the same  
797           bundle.

798           See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].

### 3.3 PackageIdentityType



800

801 **Figure 4: PackageIdentityType structure.**

802 The software package described by the SDD can be identified for humans and package management  
 803 software using the properties in *PackageIdentity*. The *PackageIdentity* is not to be confused with the  
 804 identity of the deployed software, which is described in the resulting resource elements of the deployment  
 805 descriptor; see the *ResultingResourceType* section [4.8.1].

#### 3.3.1 PackageIdentityType Property Summary

| Name        | Data Type              | *    | Description   |
|-------------|------------------------|------|---|
|             | [extends] IdentityType |      | See the IdentityType section for additional properties [3.4].   |
| packageType | PackageTypeType        | 0..1 | The type of the package, for example, "baseInstall" or "maintenance".<br>**default value="baseInstall". |
| contentType | xsd:QName              | 0..1 | The type of content provided by this package, for example, BIOS.  |
| label       | xsd:NCName             | 0..1 | A programmatic label for this package.  |
|             | xsd:anyAttribute       | 0..* |   |

#### 3.3.2 PackageIdentityType Property Usage Notes

807 See the *IdentityType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [3.4].

- 808 **packageType:** The package type is provided to aid consumer understanding of the type of content  
 809 contained in the package. A package can contain more than one type of content. In this case, a single  
 810 *packageType* value should be selected that represents the primary content type as determined by the  
 811 SDD author. The SDD defines a set of enumeration values in *PackageTypeType* which are  
 812 extendable by the SDD author.  
 813

814 The enumerated types defined by the SDD are as follows:

815 • **baseInstall:** The value *baseInstall* indicates that the package provides a complete installation  
816 of the solution. This package type is associated with deployment descriptors that contain  
817 installable units with installation artifacts that install the primary solution resources.

818 When *packageType* is not specified, this is the default value.

819 • **baseUninstall:** The value *baseUninstall* indicates that the package provides a complete  
820 uninstallation of the solution. This package type is associated with deployment descriptors  
821 that contain installable units with uninstall artifacts that remove the primary solution  
822 resources.

823 • **configuration:** The value *configuration* indicates that the package configures the solution.  
824 This package type is associated with deployment descriptors that contain configuration units  
825 with configuration artifacts that configure the solution.

826 • **maintenance:** The value *maintenance* indicates that the package fixes one or more problems  
827 in the solution. This package type is associated with deployment descriptors that contain  
828 installable units with update artifacts.

829 • **modification:** The value *modification* indicates that the package modifies the function of the  
830 solution in some way such as by adding new function. This package type is associated with  
831 deployment descriptors that contain installable units with update artifacts.

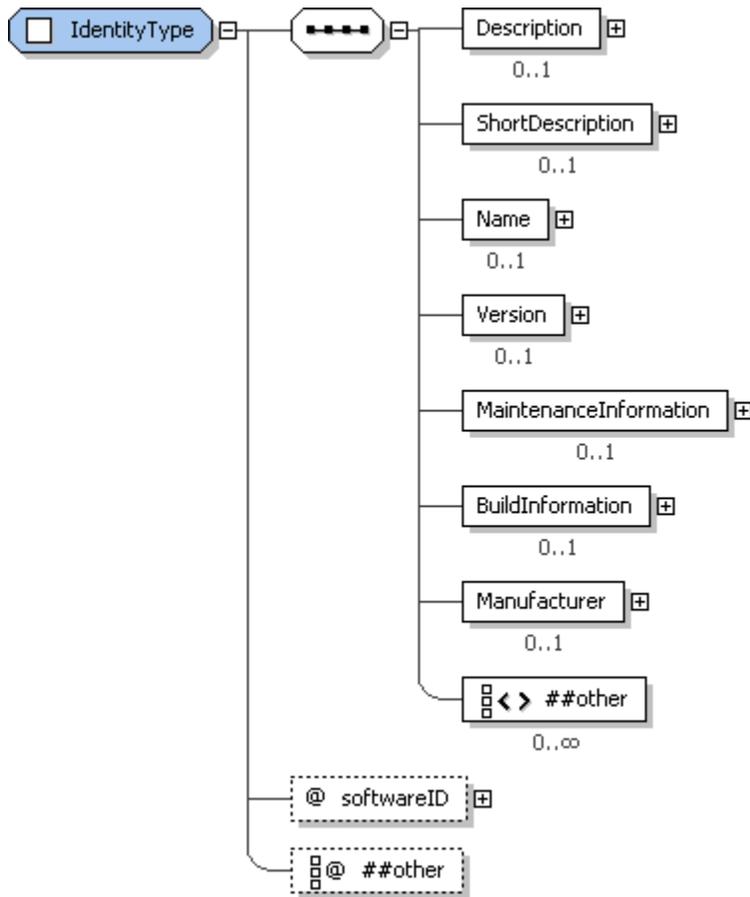
832 • **replacement:** The value *replacement* indicates that the package installs a solution that  
833 replaces a previous version of the solution. Replacement MAY be associated with migration  
834 of data into the new solution and/or with deletion of the replaced solution. When associated  
835 with migration of data, installation or configuration artifacts within the solution package would  
836 perform the migration. When associated with deletion of the replaced solution, uninstall  
837 artifacts within the solution package would perform the deletion. This package type is  
838 associated with deployment descriptors that contain installable units with installation artifacts  
839 that deploy a set of resources that replace the set of resources associated with a previous  
840 version of the solution.

841 • **localization:** The value *localization* indicates that the package contains materials that  
842 localize deployed software for one or more languages.

843 ▪ **contentType:** The value of *contentType* is determined by the SDD manufacturer to communicate a  
844 characteristic of the package that MAY be used in the manufacturer's package management system  
845 or other manufacturer-specific tools that use the SDD. The SDD author chooses the values; they are  
846 not defined in this specification.

847 ▪ **label:** The label MAY be used as an index in a package management system. The SDD author  
848 chooses the values; they are not defined in this specification.

849 **3.4 IdentityType**



850  
851 **Figure 5: IdentityType structure.**

852 This complex type provides identity information for the package as a whole, as well as for content  
 853 elements, which are portions of the package. Content elements are the *InstallableUnit*, *LocalizationUnit*,  
 854 *ConfigurationUnit*, *CompositeUnit* and *CompositeInstallable* elements defined in the deployment  
 855 descriptor.

856 **3.4.1 IdentityType Property Summary**

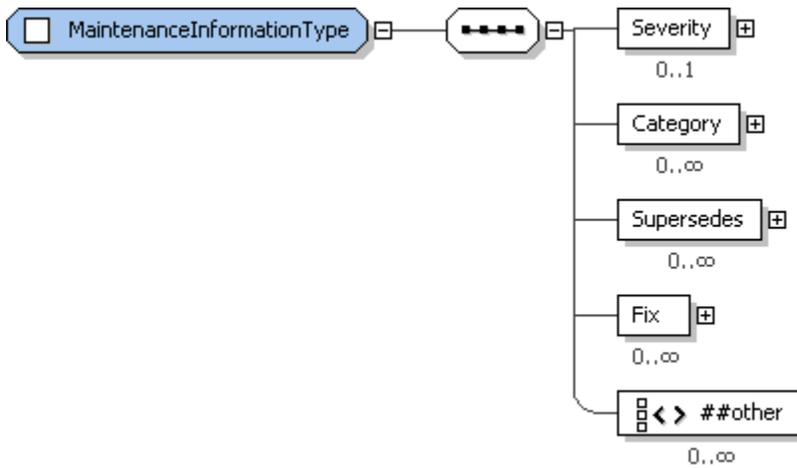
| Name                   | Data Type                  | *    | Description  |
|------------------------|----------------------------|------|--|
| Description            | DisplayTextType            | 0..1 | A verbose description of the package or content element.   |
| ShortDescription       | DisplayTextType            | 0..1 | A limited description of the package or content element.   |
| Name                   | DisplayTextType            | 0..1 | A human-readable, translatable, name for the package or content element.   |
| Version                | VersionType                | 0..1 | The package or content element version.  |
| MaintenanceInformation | MaintenanceInformationType | 0..1 | Information about package or content element content used when the package contains maintenance.   |
| BuildInformation       | BuildInformationType       | 0..1 | A manufacturer identifier for the build of this package or content element. This property can be extended with additional manufacturer-specific information about the build. |

|              |                  |      |   |
|--------------|------------------|------|---|
| Manufacturer | ManufacturerType | 0..1 | Information about the manufacturer of the package or content element.   |
|              | xsd:any          | 0..* |   |
| softwareID   | xsd:string       | 0..1 | A manufacturer's identification number for the software created or updated by the package or content element. |
|              | xsd:anyAttribute | 0..* |   |

### 857 3.4.2 IdentityType Property Usage Notes

- 858   ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
859 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the package.
- 860    The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 861    See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 862   ▪ **Name:** When the manufacturer of the SDD has a package management system, *Name* in  
863 *PackagelIdentity* should correspond to the name of the package as known in the package  
864 management system. *Name* in a content element's *Identity* should correspond to the name of the unit  
865 of packaging, if it is known in the package management system.
- 866    When the *PackagelIdentity* element is defined, *Name* MUST be defined.
- 867    Software packages that create software often have the same name as the deployed software.
- 868    Software packages that update software often have a name that reflects the fact that the package is a  
869 maintenance package, differentiating it from the base deployed software. The author of the software  
870 package that is described by *PackagelIdentity* determines whether the *Name* is the same as or  
871 different from the *Name* of the deployed software.
- 872    See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 873   ▪ **Version:** This is a packaging version. In *PackagelIdentity*, it is the version of the package as a whole.  
874 In content element identities, this is the version of the unit of packaging represented by the content  
875 element. In either case, the SDD author MAY choose to make this version correspond to the version  
876 of a resulting or changed resource, but it should not be confused with resource versions.
- 877    In the case of a base install, version MAY be the same as the top level resulting resource. In the case  
878 of a configuration package, version SHOULD NOT be the same as the top level resulting resource.
- 879    See the *VersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].
- 880   ▪ **MaintenanceInformation:** This is used when the package or content element describes the  
881 deployment of maintenance.
- 882    See the *MaintenanceInformationType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.5].
- 883   ▪ **BuildInformation:** In *PackagelIdentity*, this describes the build of the package as a whole. In content  
884 element *Identity*, this describes the build of the artifact(s) and the content element describing the  
885 artifact.
- 886    See the *BuildInformationType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.7].
- 887   ▪ **Manufacturer:** See the *ManufacturerType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.8].
- 888   ▪ **softwareID:** The software identified by *softwareID* is the software whose deployment is described by  
889 the SDD. When the manufacturer maintains software identifiers within a sales and distribution  
890 system, the *softwareID* SHOULD correspond to an identifier for the software within that system. If a  
891 format for software identifiers is not pre-existing within the manufacturer's systems, a UUID SHOULD  
892 be used for *softwareID*. When a UUID is used, it MUST be unique within the domain in which the  
893 described software is used.

894 **3.5 MaintenanceInformationType**



895  
896 **Figure 6: MaintenanceInformationType structure.**

897 If the package provides maintenance for deployed software, *MaintenanceInformation* declares information  
898 about the fix or fixes provided. If the package content is a single fix, *MaintenanceInformation* describes  
899 the information about that one fix. If the content is a collection of fixes—for example, a fix pack—  
900 *MaintenanceInformation* describes each of the fixes provided by the fix pack.

901 **3.5.1 MaintenanceInformationType Property Summary**

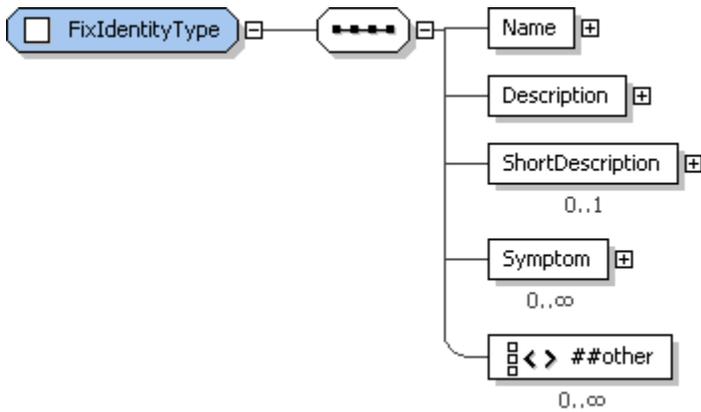
| Name       | Data Type                  | *    | Description  |
|------------|----------------------------|------|--|
| Severity   | DisplayTextType            | 0..1 | Severity of the maintenance content.   |
| Category   | DisplayTextType            | 0..* | Category of the maintenance content.   |
| Supersedes | MaintenanceInformationType | 0..* | A previously released fix that is superseded by application of this maintenance. |
| Fix        | FixIdentityType            | 0..* | An included fix.   |
|            | xsd:any                    | 0..* |  |

902 **3.5.2 MaintenanceInformationType Property Usage Notes**

- 903 ▪ **Severity:** This value SHOULD correspond to a severity value used within the SDD provider’s support  
904 system. It serves as a hint to the deployer about the urgency of applying the described maintenance.  
905 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 906 ▪ **Category:** These values SHOULD correspond to maintenance categories within the SDD provider’s  
907 support system.  
908 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 909 ▪ **Supersedes:** Superseded fixes are ones that fix a problem also fixed by the superseding  
910 maintenance package or content element and therefore need not be applied.  
911 This element does not indicate whether or not the superseded fix needs to be removed. To indicate  
912 that the previous fix must be removed before the superseding maintenance can be applied  
913 successfully; the SDD author can create a requirement stating that the fix must not be present.  
914 Superseded fixes MAY include all the information defined in *MaintenanceInformationType*. At a  
915 minimum, a superseded fix MUST include at least one *Fix* element with the name of the superseded  
916 fix defined.
- 917 ▪ **Fix:** *Fix* elements provide information about individual fixes provided by the maintenance content.

918 See the *FixIdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.6].

919 **3.6 FixIdentityType**



920  
921 **Figure 7: FixIdentityType structure.**

922 Elements of *FixIdentityType* describe fixes that will be applied when the package is deployed or the  
923 content element is applied.

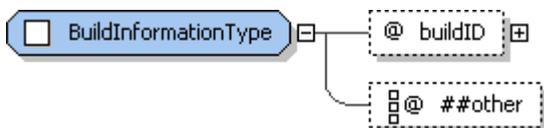
924 **3.6.1 FixIdentityType Property Summary**

| Name             | Type            | *    | Description   |
|------------------|-----------------|------|---|
| Name             | xsd:NMTOKEN     | 1    | A name for the fix which is, at a minimum, unique within the scope of the resource fixed. |
| Description      | DisplayTextType | 1    | A complete description of the fix.  |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | An abbreviated description of the fix.  |
| Symptom          | DisplayTextType | 0..* | A symptom of the problem fixed.   |
|                  | xsd:any         | 0..* |   |

925 **3.6.2 FixIdentityType Property Usage Notes**

- 926 ▪ **Name:** The *Name* element MUST provide a value that uniquely identifies a fix within a scope defined  
927 by the manufacturer. This is a name provided by the manufacturer that corresponds to the fix name  
928 as understood in the deployment environment.
- 929 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
930 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the fix.  
931 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
932 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 933 ▪ **Symptom:** Symptom strings can be used to correlate a fix with one or more experienced problems.  
934 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].

935 **3.7 BuildInformationType**



936  
937 **Figure 8: BuildInformationType structure.**

938 *BuildInformationType* provides the type definition for the *BuildInformation* element in package and content  
 939 element identity. *BuildInformation* provides information about the creation of the package and its parts.

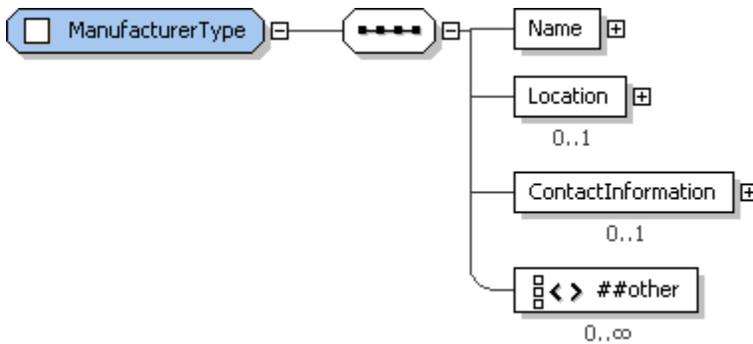
940 **3.7.1 BuildInformationType Property Summary**

| Name    | Type             | *    | Description   |
|---------|------------------|------|---|
| buildID | xsd:token        | 1    | Identifies the build of the package or package element. |
|         | xsd:anyAttribute | 0..* |   |

941 **3.7.2 BuildInformationType Property Usage Notes**

- 942 ▪ **buildID:** The *buildID* attribute is an identifier provided by the manufacturer and meaningful to  
 943 developers that can be used to identify a build of the defining element. This information MUST  
 944 correspond with information known in the manufacturer’s build environment. It is traditionally used  
 945 during problem determination to allow maintainers of the software to determine the specifics of  
 946 package creation. Inclusion of *buildID* in the SDD allows the end user to provide this information to  
 947 package maintainers, enabling them to correlate the deployed software with a particular known build  
 948 of the software.

949 **3.8 ManufacturerType**



950  
 951 **Figure 9: ManufacturerType structure.**

952 The SDD author can include information about the package manufacturer that includes name, location  
 953 and contact information such as the address of the manufacturer’s Web site or telephone number.

954 **3.8.1 ManufacturerType Property Summary**

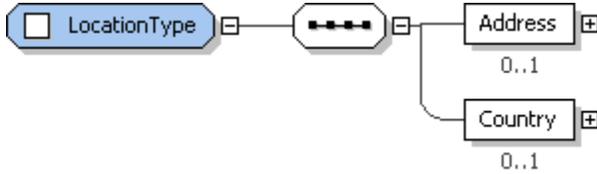
| Name               | Type            | *    | Description                                  |
|--------------------|-----------------|------|--|
| Name               | DisplayTextType | 1    | A translatable name for the manufacturer.    |
| Location           | LocationType    | 0..1 | The address and country of the manufacturer. |
| ContactInformation | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | Contact information for the manufacturer.    |
|                    | xsd:any         | 0..* |  |

955 **3.8.2 ManufacturerType Property Usage Notes**

- 956 ▪ **Name:** The value provided in the *Name* element MUST be an identifiable name of the manufacturer  
 957 of the SDD.  
 958 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 959 ▪ **Location:** See the *LocationType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.9].

- 960 ▪ **ContactInformation:** This element MAY provide additional contact information for the named  
961 manufacturer, such as a support Web site address or a technical support telephone number.  
962 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].

### 963 3.9 LocationType



964  
965 **Figure 10: LocationType structure.**

966 *LocationType* supports inclusion of the manufacturer’s address and country in package and content  
967 element identity.

#### 968 3.9.1 LocationType Property Summary

| Name    | Type            | *    | Description                 |
|---------|-----------------|------|-----------------------------|
| Address | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | The manufacturer’s address. |
| Country | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | The manufacturer’s country. |

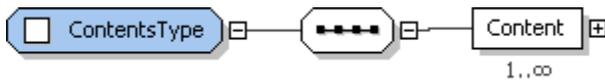
#### 969 3.9.2 LocationType Property Usage Notes

- 970 ▪ **Address:** This is the mailing address or the physical address.  
971 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 972 ▪ **Country:** Recording the manufacturer’s country in the SDD provides information that may be of  
973 interest in relation to import and export of software.  
974 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].

### 975 3.10 VersionType

976 *VersionType* provides the type definition for version elements in the package descriptor and deployment  
977 descriptor. It is a simple type that is based on `xsd:string` with no further restrictions. This means that  
978 versions in the SDD are represented simply as strings. Because resource versions exist in the  
979 deployment environment, their formats and semantics vary widely. For this reason, the format and  
980 semantics of versions are not defined by this specification.

### 981 3.11 ContentsType



982  
983 **Figure 11: Contents structure.**

984 *ContentsType* is used in *PackageDescriptor* to provide a list of one or more *Content* elements.

#### 985 3.11.1 ContentsType Property Summary

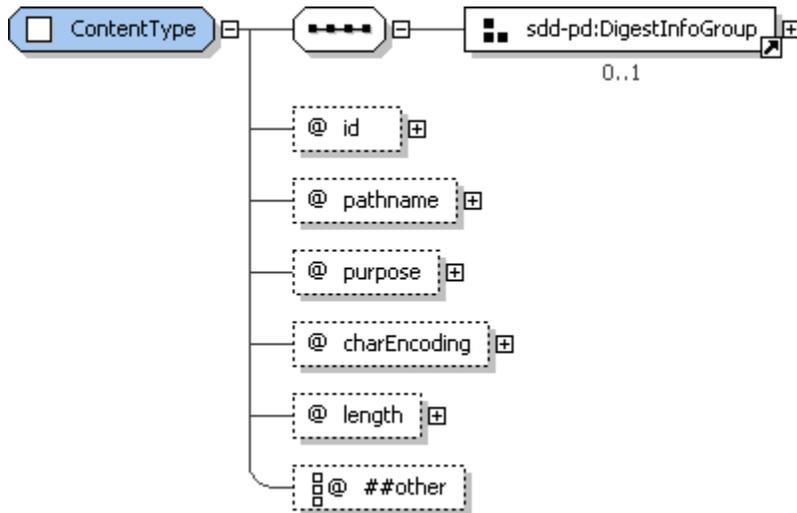
| Name    | Type        | *    | Description  |
|---------|-------------|------|--|
| Content | ContentType | 1..* | Describes the physical contents of the software package. |

986 **3.11.2 ContentsType Property Usage Notes**

- 987 ▪ **Content:** A *PackageDescriptor* MUST contain a *Contents* element that is a list of one or more
- 988 *Content* elements.

989 See the *ContentType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.12].

990 **3.12 ContentType**



991  
992 **Figure 12: ContentType structure.**

993 A software package includes one or more content files. *ContentType* defines the properties of a content  
 994 file included in the package descriptor. Content defined in the package descriptor as part of the software  
 995 package does not need to be physically co-located. Each element MUST be in a location that can be  
 996 identified by a URI. The *pathname* attribute of each content file defines a URI for accessing the file.  
 997 Characteristics of the content files—such as their length, purpose and character encoding—MAY be  
 998 declared in the package descriptor.

999 **3.12.1 ContentType Property Summary**

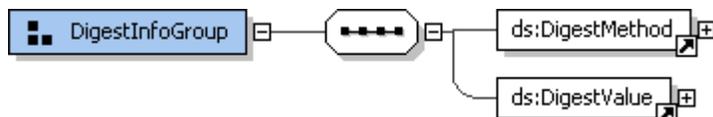
| Name            | Data Type              | *    | Description  |
|-----------------|------------------------|------|--|
| ds:DigestMethod | ds:DigestMethodType    | 0..1 | Specifies the digest method applied to the file.   |
| ds:DigestValue  | ds:DigestValueType     | 0..1 | Specifies the Base64-encoded value of the digest of the file.  |
| id              | xsd:ID                 | 1    | An identifier used in deployment descriptors to refer to the file definition in the associated package descriptor. |
| pathname        | xsd:anyURI             | 1    | The absolute or relative path of the content file including the file name.   |
| purpose         | ContentPurposeType     | 0..1 | Associates a purpose classification with a file.<br>**default value="content"                                      |
| charEncoding    | xsd:string             | 0..1 | Specifies the character encoding of the contents of the file.  |
| length          | xsd:nonNegativeInteger | 0..1 | Specifies the size of the file in bytes.   |
|                 | xsd:anyAttribute       | 0..* |  |

1000 **3.12.2 ContentType Property Usage Notes**

- 1001 ▪ **ds:DigestMethod, ds:DigestValue:** These values MAY be used to assist with file verification.

- 1002 See the *DigestInfoGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [3.13].
- 1003 ▪ **id**: This is the identifier for the content that is used as a reference in artifact elements in the  
1004 deployment descriptor.
- 1005 The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
1006 log and trace messages.
- 1007 ▪ **pathname**: *pathname* is used to access content in the package. The path of the file MUST be a URI  
1008 that specifies an absolute path or a path relative to the location of the package descriptor. It MUST  
1009 include the file name.
- 1010 ▪ **purpose**: The *purpose* attribute enables the *PackageDescriptor* author to associate a classification  
1011 with a file. The classification identifies the file as having a specific purpose. *ContentPurposeType*  
1012 defines a union of *SDDContentPurposeType* with *xsd:NCName*. The *purpose* value MAY be chosen  
1013 from one of the following values enumerated in *SDDContentPurposeType* or be a valid NCName  
1014 value provided by the SDD author. If *purpose* is not specified, the default value is *content*.
- 1015 Enumerated values for *purpose* are:
- 1016 • **readMe**: A file with information about the package. An implementation may choose to display  
1017 this to a user as part of the deployment process.
  - 1018 • **endUserLicenseAgreement**: A file containing an end user license agreement. An  
1019 implementation may choose to display this to a user as part of the deployment process.
  - 1020 • **responseFile**: A file that contains input values for an operation.
  - 1021 • **deploymentDescriptor**: An XML file containing the *DeploymentDescriptor* definition  
1022 associated with the *PackageDescriptor*. A valid *PackageDescriptor* MUST have exactly one  
1023 *Content* element with a *purpose* value of *deploymentDescriptor*.
  - 1024 • **packageDescriptor**: Supports aggregation of packages. This is used to reference a  
1025 *packageDescriptor* of an aggregated package.
  - 1026 • **descriptorLanguageBundle**: A file containing translations of text defined directly in the  
1027 package descriptor or its associated deployment descriptor.
  - 1028 • **content**: A file used during deployment of solution content. This is the default value for  
1029 purpose.
- 1030 ▪ **charEncoding**: This attribute need only be used for files that a run-time is required to render.  
1031 Common *charEncoding* values include “ASCII”, “UTF-8”, “UTF-16” and “Shift\_JIS”. For an extensive  
1032 list of character encodings, see [IANA-CHARSET].
- 1033 ▪ **length**: The file length MAY be used for simple file verification.

### 1034 3.13 DigestInfoGroup



1035  
1036 **Figure 13: DigestInfoGroup structure.**

1037 When digest information is used to sign a content file, both the digest method and the digest value MUST  
1038 be provided.

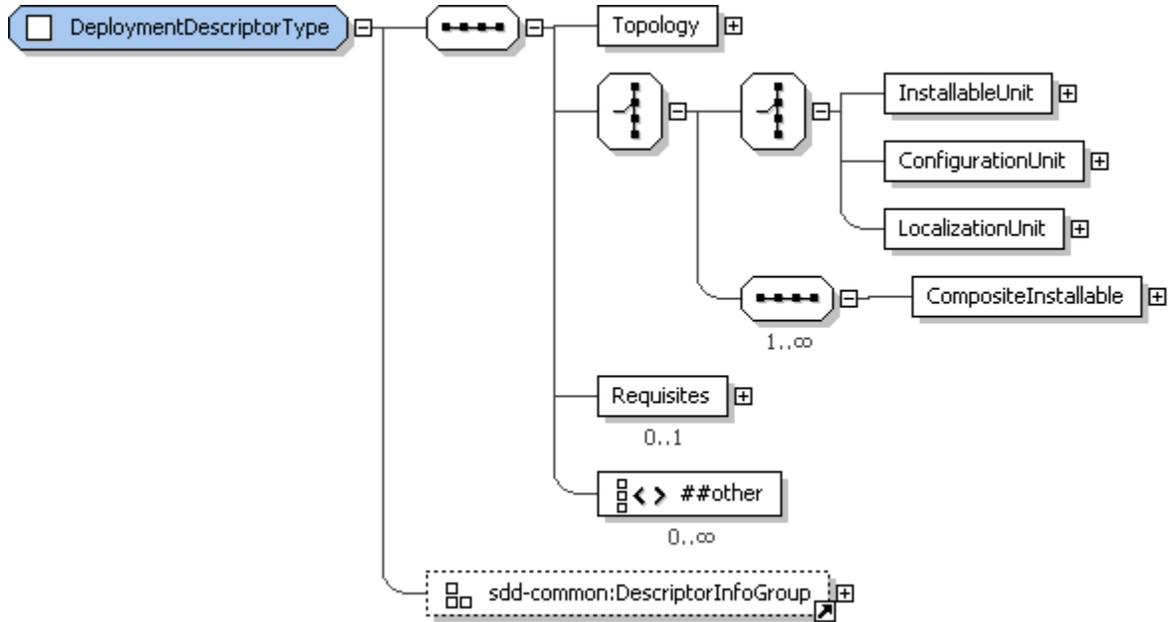
#### 1039 3.13.1 DigestInfoGroup Property Usage Notes

- 1040 ▪ **ds:DigestMethod, ds:DigestValue**: *ds:digestMethod* and *ds:digestValue* MAY be used to digitally  
1041 sign individual files. If files are signed, the digest value MUST be calculated over the whole of each  
1042 file.
- 1043 See [XMLDSIG-CORE] for details on the usage of *ds:DigestMethod* and *ds:DigestValue*.

1044 **4 Deployment Descriptor**

1045 A solution package contains a deployment descriptor in addition to a package descriptor. The deployment  
 1046 descriptor describes the topology, selectability, inputs, requirements and conditions of the deployment.  
 1047 The deployment descriptor is associated with a package descriptor and refers to content files in that  
 1048 package descriptor.

1049 **4.1 DeploymentDescriptor**



1050  
 1051 **Figure 14: DeploymentDescriptor structure.**

1052 *DeploymentDescriptor* is the top level element of a deployment descriptor. The *DeploymentDescriptor*  
 1053 defines the information required to support deployment of the package contents. This includes the  
 1054 *Topology*, which declares all of the resources that may participate in deployment. It also includes one  
 1055 atomic content element or one or more *CompositeInstallable* content elements. Atomic content elements  
 1056 are *InstallableUnit*, *ConfigurationUnit*, or *LocalizationUnit*. Atomic content elements define artifacts that  
 1057 can be processed to deploy software resources. They are atomic because they cannot aggregate other  
 1058 content elements. A *CompositeInstallable* element is the root of a content element hierarchy that defines  
 1059 content that performs the one deployment operation supported by the *CompositeInstallable*. A  
 1060 *CompositeInstallable* can define base, selectable and localization content as well as the aggregation of  
 1061 other content elements.

## 4.1.1 DeploymentDescriptor Property Summary

| Name                     | Data Type                | *    | Description  |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|------|--|
| Topology                 | TopologyType             | 1    | Defines resources that are required, created or modified by deployment.  |
| InstallableUnit          | InstallableUnitType      | 0..1 | Defines content that installs, updates and/or uninstalls resources. When an InstallableUnit is defined, no ConfigurationUnit, LocalizationUnit or CompositeInstallable elements can be defined.  |
| ConfigurationUnit        | ConfigurationUnitType    | 0..1 | Defines content that configures resources. When a ConfigurationUnit is defined, no InstallableUnit, LocalizationUnit or CompositeInstallable elements can be defined.  |
| LocalizationUnit         | LocalizationUnitType     | 0..1 | Defines content that installs, updates and/or uninstalls translated materials. When a LocalizationUnit is defined, no InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit or CompositeInstallable elements can be defined.  |
| CompositeInstallable     | CompositeInstallableType | 0..* | Defines a hierarchy of base, selectable and/or localization content used to perform one deployment lifecycle operation. When one or more CompositeInstallable elements are defined, no InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit or LocalizationUnit elements can be defined. |
| Requisites               | RequisitesType           | 0..1 | A list of references to SDD packages that can optionally be deployed to satisfy deployment requirements of the defining SDD.   |
|                          | xsd:any                  | 0..* |  |
| schemaVersion            | xsd:string               | 1    | The descriptor complies with this version of the Solution Deployment Descriptor Specification.<br>**fixed value="1.0"  |
| descriptorID             | UUIDType                 | 1    | Identifier of the deployment descriptor for a particular set of deployable content.  |
| lastModified             | xsd:dateTime             | 1    | The time the descriptor was last modified.   |
| descriptorLanguageBundle | xsd:token                | 0..1 | The root name of language bundle files containing translations for display text elements in the deployment descriptor.   |
|                          | xsd:anyAttribute         | 0..* |  |

## 4.1.2 DeploymentDescriptor Property Usage Notes

- **Topology:** *Topology* provides a logical view of all resources that may participate in any particular deployment. A resource can participate by being required, created or modified by the deployment. A required resource MAY also play the role of target resource, meaning that it can process artifacts to perform some portion of the deployment. The resources that actually participate in a particular deployment are determined by the user inputs, selections and resource bindings provided during that deployment.

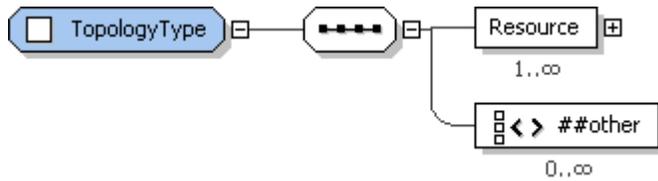
See the *TopologyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.1].

- 1071   ▪ **InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit, LocalizationUnit, CompositeInstallable:** A simple software  
1072   deployment that uses a single artifact for each supported deployment operation MAY be described  
1073   using an SDD that defines a single atomic content element—*InstallableUnit*, *ConfigurationUnit* or  
1074   *LocalizationUnit*.
- 1075   A software deployment that requires multiple artifacts, aggregates other deployment packages or has  
1076   selectable content MAY be described using an SDD that defines one or more *CompositeInstallable*  
1077   elements. Each *CompositeInstallable* MUST describe one deployment lifecycle operation for the  
1078   package.
- 1079   See the respective sections (*InstallableUnitType* [4.3.1], *ConfigurationUnitType* [4.3.2],  
1080   *LocalizationUnitType* [4.13.2] and *CompositeInstallableType* [4.9.1]) for structure and additional  
1081   usage details.
- 1082   ▪ **Requisites:** When the package author chooses to provide deployment packages for required  
1083   software, those packages are described by *Requisite* elements in *Requisites*.
- 1084   Including requisite packages in the SDD package MAY provide a convenient way for the deployer to  
1085   satisfy one or more SDD requirements.
- 1086   See the *RequisitesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.5].
- 1087   ▪ **schemaVersion, descriptorID, lastModified, descriptorLanguageBundle:** These attributes can be  
1088   useful to tooling that manages, creates or modifies deployment descriptors and to tooling and  
1089   deployment software that displays information from the deployment descriptor to humans.
- 1090   See the *DescriptorInfoGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [3.2].

## 1091   4.2 Topology

- 1092   The SDD's topology describes all the resources that may be required, created or modified when any of  
1093   the deployment operations supported by the SDD are performed.
- 1094   Primary identifying characteristics of the resources can be defined in topology. Constraints beyond these  
1095   primary characteristics are not defined in topology; they are defined in content elements that reference  
1096   the resource definitions in topology.
- 1097   The topology includes identification of *hosts-hostedBy* relationships between resources. When both  
1098   resources in that relationship participate in a particular deployment, the relationship is considered a  
1099   requirement for that deployment.
- 1100   It is possible that only a subset of the resources described in topology will play a role in a particular  
1101   deployment. This is determined by the selection of content elements for the particular deployment. The  
1102   resources that are required, created or modified by the content elements in scope for the deployment are  
1103   the ones that will participate in the deployment and so are associated with resources in the deployment  
1104   environment.
- 1105   At deployment time, definitions of the resources that participate in that particular deployment are  
1106   associated with actual resource instances in the deployment environment. The mechanisms for  
1107   associating resource definitions with resource instances are not described by the SDD. The SDD  
1108   metadata describes the characteristics of the participating resources. Whether associations of resource  
1109   instances with matching characteristics are made by user choice or entirely by software does not affect  
1110   the success of the deployment. Resource characteristics used when making this association include  
1111   those defined in topology plus all those defined in constraints on the resource in the content elements that  
1112   are in scope for the particular deployment.
- 1113   Some topologies are variable. That is, a particular set of logical resources of the same type in the  
1114   topology might be associated with different physical resource instances or the same physical resource  
1115   during deployment. In this case, a separate logical resource definition is created in topology for each  
1116   possible physical resource instance. Uniqueness constraints can then be used to describe the conditions  
1117   under which the separate resources can be associated with a single resource.
- 1118   All resource definitions in the SDD are in topology. All other descriptions of resources in the SDD are  
1119   references to the resource definitions in the topology.

1120 **4.2.1 TopologyType**



1121  
1122 **Figure 15: TopologyType structure.**

1123 The *Topology* element defines one or more hierarchies of resource specifications that describe the  
 1124 resources that MAY play a role in the deployment of the contents of the solution package. These resource  
 1125 specifications do not identify specific resource instances in a specific deployment environment. Instead,  
 1126 they are logical specifications of resources that can be associated with specific resource instances in the  
 1127 deployment environment for a particular deployment based on the described resource identity  
 1128 characteristics. These resources have a role in a particular solution deployment only when they are  
 1129 required, created or modified by a content element, or referred to by a variable, in that particular solution  
 1130 deployment.

1131 **4.2.1.1 TopologyType Property Summary**

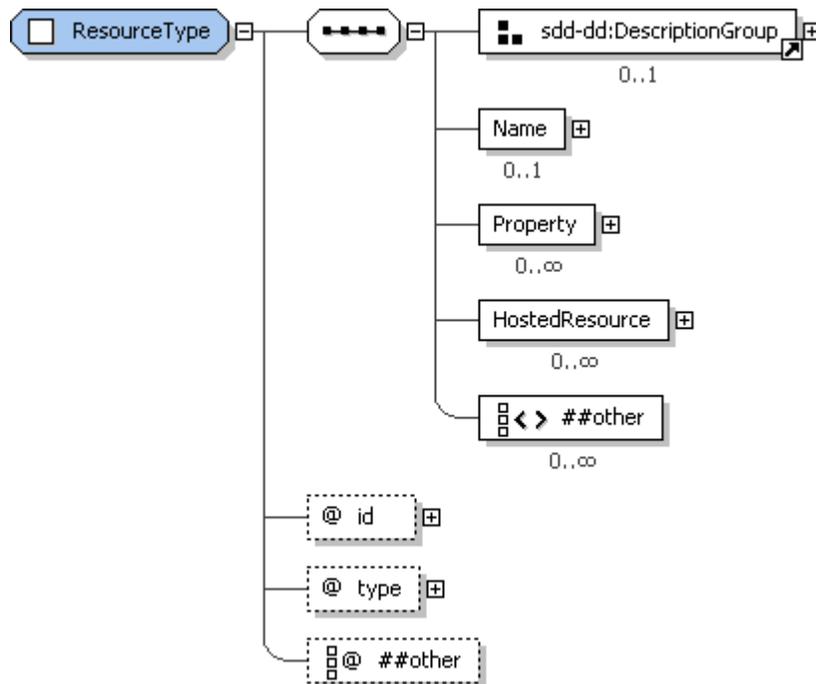
| Name     | Type         | *    | Description   |
|----------|--------------|------|---|
| Resource | ResourceType | 1..* | The root of a tree of resources that play a role in the solution. |
|          | xsd:any      | 0..* |   |

1132 **4.2.1.2 TopologyType Property Usage Notes**

- 1133 ▪ **Resource:** The SDD author’s decision to model a resource in the deployment environment as a  
 1134 resource in the SDD depends on the need to know about that resource when planning for  
 1135 deployment, aggregating, deploying and managing the resource lifecycle using the SDD. All  
 1136 resources required by the solution SHOULD be included. For all *Requirements* declared in the SDD,  
 1137 resources MUST be specified. Resources referred to by *ResultingResource* or *ResultingChange*  
 1138 elements MUST also be included. The more complete the SDD is, the more useful it will be in guiding  
 1139 successful deployment.  
 1140 See the *ResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.2].

1141

## 4.2.2 ResourceType



1142

1143

**Figure 16: Resource Type structure.**

1144 Elements of *Resource Type*—both the top level *Resource* elements and the *HostedResource* elements  
 1145 within the resource hierarchy—make up the topology of an SDD. Each *Resource* element declares, at a  
 1146 minimum, the type of the resource. Values for resource type are not defined by this specification. A core  
 1147 assumption of this specification is that an understanding of specific resource types and resource  
 1148 characteristics are shared by the deployment descriptor author and the deployment software. Therefore, if  
 1149 the deployment descriptor author declares a new resource type, then deployment software operating on  
 1150 the SDD needs to understand how to handle that resource type.

1151 In addition to defining type, the resource elements MAY specify a name and other identity properties that  
 1152 can be used to identify instances of the resource in the deployment environment. The resource identity  
 1153 elements, *Name* and *Property*, are optional and MAY be specified in content elements rather than in  
 1154 topology. Identity properties used in the resource specification in topology MUST be those that do not  
 1155 change during deployment, even when the resource is updated. Because resource versions can often  
 1156 change during an update, there is no version element in resource specifications in *Topology*. Values can  
 1157 be defined for resource name and resource properties that help to identify the resource. These represent  
 1158 the basic identity of the resource and are true for all uses of the resource in the solution.

1159 *Resource Type* provides the type definition for the *Resource* and *HostedResource* elements defined in  
 1160 *Topology*. All resources MAY nest resource definitions for resources that they host. To host a resource  
 1161 means to provide the execution environment for that resource.

1162 For example, an operating system provides the execution environment for software, and a  
 1163 database engine provides the execution environment for a database table. The operating system  
 1164 hosts the software and the database engine hosts the database table.

1165 Each resource in these hierarchies may play a role in solution deployment.

1166 Content elements determine a resource’s participation and role(s) in a particular solution deployment.  
 1167 Content elements can refer to resources in *Topology* in several ways. A resource can be identified via  
 1168 `xsd:IDREF`:

- 1169     ▪ as the target of the content element’s artifacts. A target resource is a resource that is capable of  
 1170       processing a particular artifact. A target resource is often, but not always, the host of the  
 1171       resources created by the artifacts it processes.

1172 For example, an operating system may be the target of an artifact that is a zip file. When the  
 1173 files are unzipped, the file system resource is the host of those files.

1174 See the *targetResourceRef* attribute in the *InstallableUnitType* [4.3.1], *ConfigurationUnitType*  
 1175 [4.3.2] and *LocalizationUnitType* [4.13.2] sections.

- 1176 ▪ as the required base for an update applied by the artifact referenced by the content element.  
 1177 See the *RequiredBaseType* section [4.7.8].
- 1178 ▪ as the resource that will be created by deploying the artifact referenced by the content element.  
 1179 See the *ResultingResourceType* section [4.8.1].
- 1180 ▪ as the resource that will be changed by deploying the artifact referenced by the content element.  
 1181 See the *ResultingChangeType* section [4.8.2].
- 1182 ▪ as the localization base for translated materials. The localization base is the resource that is  
 1183 localized by deploying the translated materials.  
 1184 See the *LocalizationBase* element in the *LocalizationUnitType* section [4.13.2].
- 1185 ▪ as a required resource named in the content element's *Requirements*.  
 1186 See the *RequirementsType* section [4.7.1].
- 1187 ▪ to establish a variable value from a resource property.  
 1188 See the *ResourcePropertyType* section [4.6.12].

1189 One resource MAY be referred to by any number of content elements and can be identified to play any or  
 1190 all of the roles just listed. When a content element participates in a particular solution deployment, the  
 1191 resources it references participate in that solution deployment and are associated with resource instances  
 1192 in the deployment environment.

#### 1193 4.2.2.1 ResourceType Property Summary

| Name             | Type                   | *    | Description   |
|------------------|------------------------|------|---|
| Description      | DisplayTextType        | 0..1 | A description of the resource and its role in the solution described by the SDD.          |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType        | 0..1 | A short description of the resource and its role.   |
| Name             | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | The name of the resource as known in the deployment environment.                          |
| Property         | PropertyType           | 0..* | An identity property of the resource.   |
| HostedResource   | ResourceType           | 0..* | A resource that participates in the solution and that is hosted by the defining resource. |
|                  | xsd:any                | 0..* |   |
| id               | xsd:ID                 | 1    | An identifier of the resource scoped to the descriptor.                                   |
| type             | ResourceTypeNameType   | 1    | A well-known resource type.   |
|                  | xsd:anyAttribute       | 0..* |   |

#### 1194 4.2.2.2 ResourceType Property Usage Notes

- 1195 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** If used, these elements MUST provide a human-readable  
 1196 description of the resource.
- 1197 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 1198 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].

1199     ▪ **Name:** The resource name is an identifying characteristic of the resource that correlates with a name  
1200     for the resource in the deployment environment.

1201     The type of the *Name* element, *VariableExpressionType*, allows the resource name to be expressed  
1202     as a simple string or in terms of a user input parameter or other variable.

1203         An example of a good use of a variable expression in *Resource.Name* is to make sure that the  
1204         installation directory is hosted on a file system that has sufficient space available for deployment.  
1205         In this example, the file system resource element would define a *HostedResource* element for the  
1206         directory. The *Name* of the directory would be expressed as a variable expression that refers to a  
1207         user input parameter for installation location. Content elements that use the installation directory  
1208         would express a requirement on the directory and on the file system with the additional constraint  
1209         that the file system have a certain amount of available space (to satisfy the consumption  
1210         constraints). The fact that both resources are required and that they are defined with a *hosts–*  
1211         *hostedBy* relationship in *Topology*, means that the directory that is used must be the installation  
1212         directory and it must be hosted by a file system that meets the consumption constraint for  
1213         available space.

1214     Only the *Variable* elements defined in a top level content element can be used to define a resource  
1215     *Name*, because these are the only variables visible within *Topology*.

1216     If the name of a resource is changed during deployment, for example, during an update, then the  
1217     resource name SHOULD NOT be included in the resource specification. Instead, the pre-update  
1218     resource name SHOULD be specified in the *RequiredBase* element of the installable unit that  
1219     provides the update, and the post-update name SHOULD be specified in the *ResultingResource*  
1220     element of the same installable unit.

1221     See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

1222     ▪ **Property:** *Property* elements SHOULD be used when *Name* alone is not sufficient to identify the  
1223     resource. The property used represents an identifying characteristic of a resource.

1224     See the *PropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.3].

1225     ▪ **HostedResource:** A *Resource* MAY define *HostedResource* elements. Each *HostedResource*  
1226     element is an instance of *ResourceType*. When both the host and the hosted resource participate in a  
1227     particular solution deployment, the associated resource instances selected for use during that  
1228     deployment must have a *hosts* relationship.

1229         For example, a Web application declared to be hosted on a Web server must be hosted on the  
1230         instance of the Web server that is selected for use during the deployment.

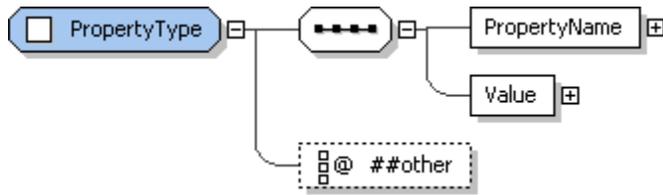
1231     If only the host resource is identified by the *DeploymentDescriptor's* content elements as participating  
1232     in the solution, then there is no assumption that the hosted resource exists.

1233     ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute uniquely identifies the resource element within the *DeploymentDescriptor*. This *id*  
1234     value is used by other elements in the *DeploymentDescriptor* to refer to this resource. This value is  
1235     created by the descriptor author.

1236     The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
1237     log and trace messages.

1238     ▪ **type:** The *type* attribute defines the class of resource. The value of *type* correlates with the resource  
1239     type known for the resource in the deployment environment. *ResourceTypeNameType* restricts *type*  
1240     to valid *xsd:QNames*. The values for *type* are not defined by this specification. Creators of  
1241     *DeploymentDescriptors* rely on knowledge of resource types that are understood by supporting  
1242     infrastructure in the target environment. To honor the descriptor author's intent, the deploying  
1243     infrastructure must be able to discover the existence of resources of the types defined in the SDD; the  
1244     values of the resource's properties; and the existence and type of resource relationships. The  
1245     deploying infrastructure also needs to understand how to use the artifact types associated with the  
1246     resource type to create, modify and delete the resource.

1247 **4.2.3 PropertyType**



1248  
1249 **Figure 17: PropertyType structure.**

1250 *PropertyType* provides the type definition for elements used to declare an identity property of a resource,  
1251 namely, the *Property* elements of *Resource* and *HostedResource* in *Topology*. It also provides the type  
1252 definition for *Property* elements in *Relationship* and *RelationshipConstraint*.

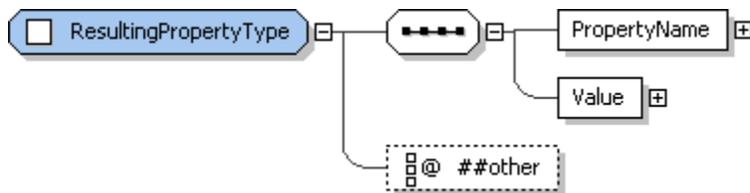
1253 **4.2.3.1 PropertyType Property Summary**

| Name         | Type                   | *    | Description         |
|--------------|------------------------|------|---------------------|
| PropertyName | xsd:QName              | 1    | The property name.  |
| Value        | VariableExpressionType | 1    | The property value. |
|              | xsd:anyAttribute       | 0..* |                     |

1254 **4.2.3.2 PropertyType Property Usage Notes**

- 1255 ▪ **PropertyName:** The *PropertyName* MAY be used to provide additional identification for the resource  
1256 in the deployment environment.  
1257 The *PropertyName* MAY be used to provide constraints on the configuration of a resource.
- 1258 ▪ **Value:** Evaluation of the *Value* expression provides the value of the property.  
1259 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

1260 **4.2.4 ResultingPropertyType**



1261  
1262 **Figure 18: ResultingPropertyType structure.**

1263 *ResultingPropertyType* provides the type definition for elements used to declare an identity property of a  
1264 resulting resource or to declare a configuration change to a resource property which results from  
1265 deployment of an artifact.

1266 **4.2.4.1 ResultingPropertyType Property Summary**

| Name         | Type                   | *    | Description                                      |
|--------------|------------------------|------|--|
| PropertyName | xsd:string             | 1    | The resulting property name.                     |
| Value        | VariableExpressionType | 1    | The resulting property value.                    |
|              | xsd:anyAttribute       | 0..* | Additional attributes of the resulting property. |

#### 1267 4.2.4.2 ResultingPropertyType Property Usage Notes

- 1268   ▪ **PropertyName:** The *PropertyName* MAY be used to provide additional identification for the resource  
1269    in the deployment environment.
- 1270    The *PropertyName* MAY be used to declare a configuration change to a resource.
- 1271   ▪ **Value:** Evaluation of the *Value* expression provides the value of the resulting property.
- 1272    See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

#### 1273 4.3 Atomic Content Elements

1274 The package descriptor defines package content that includes artifacts whose processing results in  
1275 deployment of the software package. The deployment descriptor defines metadata associated with those  
1276 artifacts. The metadata includes conditions, requirements, results, inputs, outputs and completion actions.  
1277 Metadata throughout the deployment descriptor is associated with package content in the definition of  
1278 atomic content elements. The atomic content elements are *InstallableUnit*, *ConfigurationUnit* and  
1279 *LocalizationUnit*. These are the only content elements that define *Artifacts* elements.

1280 *Artifact* elements identify an artifact file or set of files defined in package content whose processing will  
1281 perform all or a portion of the deployment for a particular deployment lifecycle operation. The name of the  
1282 artifact element indicates the operation supported by the artifact. Names of the artifact elements are  
1283 created by prefixing “Artifacts” with the operation name. The artifacts defined for use in the SDD are  
1284 *InstallArtifact*, *UpdateArtifact*, *UndoArtifact*, *UninstallArtifact*, *RepairArtifact* and *ConfigArtifact*.

1285 *Artifact* elements define the inputs and outputs, substitution values and types associated with the artifact  
1286 files. The content element’s target resource, identified by *targetResourceRef*, processes the artifact files  
1287 with the defined inputs to perform deployment operations. Examples of artifact types include zip files, rpm  
1288 files and executable install files. Artifact types are not defined by this specification. The artifact types  
1289 defined in the SDD need to be understood by software that processes the SDD.

1290 There MAY be multiple atomic content elements within a composite installable that describe the  
1291 deployment of multiple resources as part of a single software deployment or there MAY be a single  
1292 atomic content element (singleton) in the deployment descriptor that describes the entirety of a simple  
1293 deployment. When an atomic content element is used in a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST define exactly  
1294 one artifact. When an atomic content element is a singleton, it MUST define at least one artifact element  
1295 and MAY define one of each type of artifact element allowed for its type. The inclusion of an artifact  
1296 element in a singleton atomic content element implies support for the associated operation.

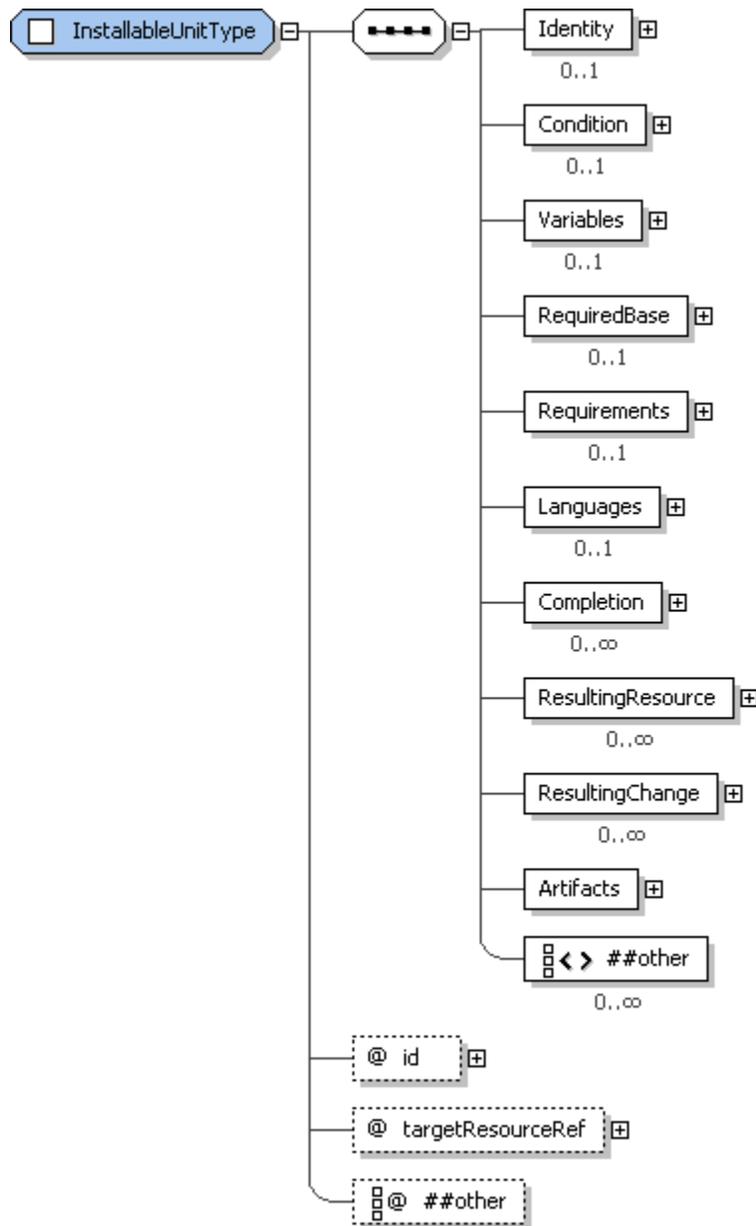
1297       For example, a singleton *ConfigurationUnit* that defines a *ConfigArtifact* associates a configure  
1298       operation with the *ConfigArtifact*. Similarly, an SDD with a singleton *InstallableUnit* that defines an  
1299       *InstallArtifact* and an *UpdateArtifact* associates an *install* operation with the *InstallArtifact* and an  
1300       *update* operation with the *UpdateArtifact*.

1301 When an atomic content element is defined within a *CompositeInstallable* hierarchy, its one artifact MUST  
1302 support the single top level operation associated with the *CompositeInstallable*. The single artifact defined  
1303 need not be an artifact for the operation defined for the *CompositeInstallable*.

1304       For example, in a *CompositeInstallable* that defines metadata for an *update* operation, there may be  
1305       one *InstallableUnit* that defines an *InstallArtifact* element and another *InstallableUnit* that defines an  
1306       *UpdateArtifact* element. Both of these artifacts are used when performing the overall *update* operation  
1307       defined for the *CompositeInstallable*.

1308

### 4.3.1 InstallableUnitType



1310

1311 **Figure 19: InstallableUnitType structure.**

1312 The *InstallableUnit* element is an atomic content element that defines artifacts that install or update  
 1313 software and defines requirements for applying those artifacts. It may also define artifacts that undo an  
 1314 update or that uninstall or repair existing software.

#### 4.3.1.1 InstallableUnitType Property Summary

| Name      | Type          | *    | Description  |
|-----------|---------------|------|--|
| Identity  | IdentityType  | 0..1 | Human-understandable identity information about the InstallableUnit.                       |
| Condition | ConditionType | 0..1 | A condition that determines if the content element is relevant to a particular deployment. |
| Variables | VariablesType | 0..1 | Variables for use within the InstallableUnit's requirements and artifact                   |

|                   |                           |      |  |
|-------------------|---------------------------|------|--|
|                   |                           |      | definitions.   |
| RequiredBase      | RequiredBaseType          | 0..1 | A resource that will be updated when the InstallableUnit's UpdateArtifact is processed.            |
| Requirements      | RequirementsType          | 0..1 | Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of the InstallableUnit's artifacts.   |
| Languages         | LanguagesType             | 0..1 | Languages supported by the InstallableUnit.  |
| Completion        | CompletionType            | 0..* | Describes completion actions such as restart and the conditions under which the action is applied. |
| ResultingResource | ResultingResourceType     | 0..* | A resource that will be installed or updated by processing the InstallableUnit's artifacts.        |
| ResultingChange   | ResultingChangeType       | 0..* | A resource that will be configured by processing the InstallableUnit's artifacts.                  |
| Artifacts         | InstallationArtifactsType | 1    | The set of artifacts associated with the InstallableUnit.  |
|                   | xsd:any                   | 0..* |  |
| id                | xsd:ID                    | 1    | An identifier for the InstallableUnit scoped to the deployment descriptor.                         |
| targetResourceRef | xsd:IDREF                 | 1    | Reference to the resource that can process the InstallableUnit's artifacts.                        |
|                   | xsd:anyAttribute          | 0..* |  |

#### 1316 4.3.1.2 InstallableUnitType Property Usage Notes

- 1317
- 1318
- 1319 ■ **Identity:** The *InstallableUnit's Identity* element defines human-understandable information that  
1320 reflects the identity of the solution as understood by the end user of the solution.  
1321 If the *InstallableUnit* defines a resulting resource, the *Identity* of the *InstallableUnit* SHOULD reflect  
1322 the identity of the resulting resource.  
1323 When the *InstallableUnit* is the only content element in the deployment descriptor, its *Identity* MAY  
1324 define values that are the same as the corresponding *PackageIdentity* element values.  
1325 This would be useful, for example, in a case where the package is known by the same name as  
1326 the resource created by the *InstallableUnit*.  
1327 See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
  - 1328 ■ **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the *InstallableUnit's* content should be deployed only when  
1329 certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.  
For example, one *InstallableUnit* may be applicable only when the operating system resource is  
resolved to a Linux<sup>2</sup> operating system during deployment. The *InstallableUnit* would define a

<sup>2</sup> Linux<sup>®</sup> is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.

1330            *Condition* stating that the type of the operating system must be Linux for the *InstallableUnit* to be  
1331            considered in scope for a particular deployment.

1332            See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

1333            ▪ **Variables:** An *InstallableUnit's Variables* element defines variables that are used in the definition of  
1334            the *InstallableUnit's* requirements and in parameters and properties passed to the *InstallableUnit's*  
1335            target resource.

1336            When the deployment descriptor defines a single *InstallableUnit* at the top level, that is, not inside a  
1337            *CompositeInstallable*, the variables it defines MAY be referred to by any element under *Topology*.

1338            See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.3].

1339            ▪ **Languages:** When translated materials are deployed by the *InstallableUnit's* artifacts, the languages  
1340            of the translations are listed in *Languages*.

1341            See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].

1342            ▪ **RequiredBase:** When an *InstallableUnit* can be used to update resources, the *RequiredBase*  
1343            element identifies the resources that can be updated.

1344            See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].

1345            ▪ **Requirements:** *Requirements* specified in an *InstallableUnit* identify requirements that must be met  
1346            prior to successful processing of the *InstallableUnit's* artifacts.

1347            See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].

1348            ▪ **Completion:** A *Completion* element MUST be included if the artifact being processed requires a  
1349            system operation such as a reboot or logoff to occur to function successfully after deployment or if the  
1350            artifact executes a system operation to complete deployment of the contents of the artifact.

1351            There MUST be an artifact associated with the operation defined by a *Completion* element.

1352                       For example, if there is a *Completion* element for the *install* operation, the *InstallableUnit* must  
1353                       define an *InstallArtifact*.

1354            See the *CompletionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.14].

1355            ▪ **ResultingResource:** An *InstallableUnit's ResultingResource* element identifies the resources in  
1356            *Topology* that will be installed or updated when the *InstallableUnit's* artifacts are processed.

1357            See the *ResultingResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.1].

1358            ▪ **ResultingChange:** Multiple content elements within the SDD MAY specify the same resource in their  
1359            *ResultingChange* elements. In this case each content element is capable of modifying the  
1360            configuration of that resource.

1361            An example use of the *ResultingChange* element is to understand whether or not one content  
1362            element can satisfy the requirements specified in another content element.

1363            See the *ResultingChangeType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.2].

1364            ▪ **Artifacts:** When the *InstallableUnit* is a singleton defined outside of a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST  
1365            define at least one artifact element and MAY define one of each type of artifact element allowed for its  
1366            type. The inclusion of an artifact element in a singleton *InstallableUnit* implies support for the  
1367            associated operation.

1368            When the *InstallableUnit* is defined within a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST define exactly one artifact.  
1369            The artifact defined MAY be any artifact allowed in an *InstallableUnit* and it MUST support the single  
1370            top level operation defined by the *CompositeInstallable*. This does not mean the operation associated  
1371            with the artifact has to be the same as the one defined by the *CompositeInstallable*.

1372                       For example, an update of a resource may be required to support an install of the overall solution,  
1373                       in which case the *InstallableUnit* would define an *UpdateArtifact* to support the top level *install*  
1374                       operation.

1375            See the *InstallationArtifactsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.4].

1376            ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute is referenced in features to identify an *InstallableUnit* selected by the feature and  
1377            *Dependency* elements to indicate a dependency on processing of the content element.

1378 The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
 1379 log and trace messages.

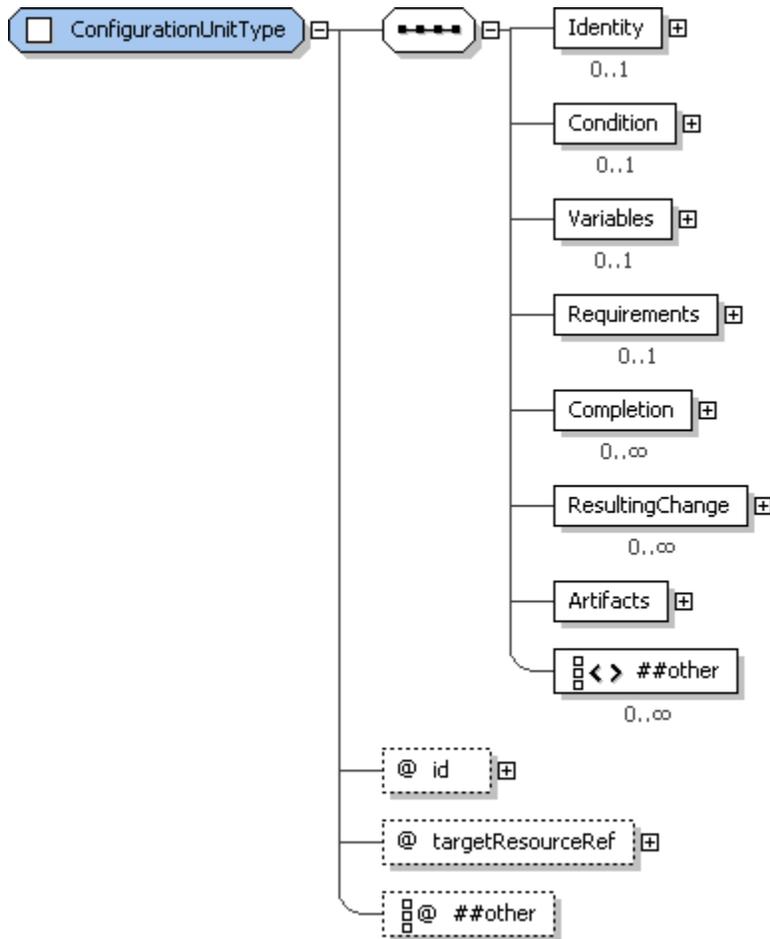
- 1380 ▪ **targetResourceRef**: The *targetResourceRef* attribute identifies the resource that will process the  
 1381 *InstallableUnit*'s artifacts.

1382 The resources created or modified by artifact processing are frequently, but not necessarily, hosted  
 1383 by the target resource.

1384 This value MUST match an *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.

1385 The target may be a resource that has not yet been created. In this case, there is a dependency on  
 1386 the complete installation of the target resource prior to applying the *InstallableUnit*. This dependency  
 1387 MUST be represented in a *Dependency* element within *Requirements* that apply to the  
 1388 *InstallableUnit*.

1389 **4.3.2 ConfigurationUnitType**



1390  
 1391 **Figure 20: ConfigurationUnitType structure.**

1392 The *ConfigurationUnit* element defines artifacts that configure one or more existing resources. It also  
 1393 defines the requirements for applying those artifacts. It MUST NOT install, update, or uninstall resources.

1394 **4.3.2.1 ConfigurationUnitType Property Summary**

| Name     | Type         | *    | Description  |
|----------|--------------|------|--|
| Identity | IdentityType | 0..1 | Human-understandable identity information about the ConfigurationUnit. |

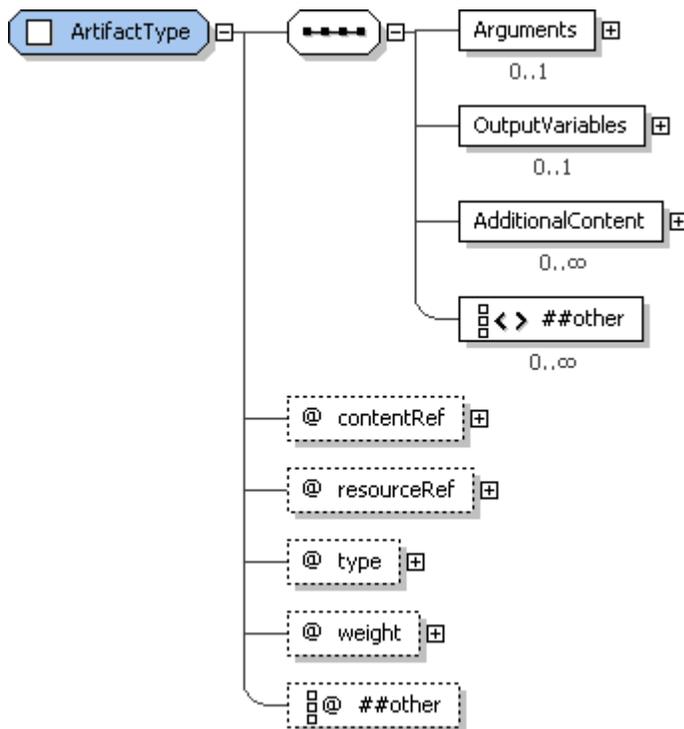
|                   |                            |      |   |
|-------------------|----------------------------|------|---|
| Condition         | ConditionType              | 0..1 | A condition that determines if the content element is relevant to a particular deployment.                          |
| Variables         | VariablesType              | 0..1 | Variables for use within the ConfigurationUnit's requirement and artifact definitions.                              |
| Requirements      | RequirementsType           | 0..1 | Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of the ConfigurationUnit's artifacts.                  |
| Completion        | CompletionType             | 0..* | Describes completion actions such as restart and the conditions under which the action is applied.                  |
| ResultingChange   | ResultingChangeType        | 0..* | A definition of changes made to a resource that is configured by processing the ConfigurationUnit's ConfigArtifact. |
| Artifacts         | ConfigurationArtifactsType | 1    | The artifact associated with the ConfigurationUnit.   |
|                   | xsd:any                    | 0..* |   |
| id                | xsd:ID                     | 1    | An identifier for the ConfigurationUnit scoped to the deployment descriptor.  |
| targetResourceRef | xsd:IDREF                  | 1    | Reference to the resource that can process the ConfigurationUnit's artifacts.                                       |
|                   | xsd:anyAttribute           | 0..* |   |

#### 1395 4.3.2.2 ConfigurationUnitType Property Usage Notes

- 1396
- 1397
- 1398
- 1399
- 1400
- 1401
- 1402
- 1403
- 1404
- 1405
- 1406
- 1407
- 1408
- 1409
- 1410
- 1411
- 1412
- 1413
- 1414
- 1415
- 1416
- 1417
- 1418
- 1419
- 1420
- 1421
- 1422
- **Identity:** The *ConfigurationUnit's Identity* element defines human-understandable information that reflects the identity of the provided configuration as understood by the end user of the solution. *Identity* has elements that are common with elements in the corresponding *PackageDescriptor's Packagelidentity* element, for example, *Name* and *Version*. The values of these common elements SHOULD be the same as the corresponding *Packagelidentity* element values.  
See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
  - **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the deployment of configuration content is dependent on the existence of certain conditions in the deployment environment.  
For example, a package that has one configuration artifact that creates a database table for one database product and a different artifact that creates a table for a different database product would have two configuration units, each with a condition on the associated database product.  
See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
  - **Variables:** A *ConfigurationUnit's Variables* element defines variables that are used in the definition of requirements and artifact parameters.  
When the deployment descriptor defines a single *ConfigurationUnit* at the top level, that is, not inside a *CompositeInstallable*, the variables it defines MAY be referred to by any element under *Topology*.  
See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.3].
  - **Requirements:** *Requirements* specified in a *ConfigurationUnit* identify requirements that MUST be met prior to successful processing of the *ConfigurationUnit's* artifacts.  
See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
  - **Completion:** A *Completion* element MUST be included if the artifact being processed requires a system operation such as a reboot or logoff to occur to function successfully after deployment or if the artifact executes a system operation to complete deployment of the contents of the artifact.  
There MUST be an artifact associated with the operation defined by a *Completion* element.  
For example, if there is a *Completion* element for the *configure* operation, the *ConfigurationUnit* must define a *ConfigArtifact*.

- 1422 See the *CompletionType* section for the structure and additional usage details [4.3.14].
- 1423 ▪ **ResultingChange:** Configuration changes made when the configuration artifact is processed
- 1424 SHOULD be declared here. This information may be necessary when the SDD is aggregated into
- 1425 another SDD and the resulting change satisfies a constraint in the aggregation. The information
- 1426 declared here can be compared with resource constraints to determine if application of the
- 1427 *ConfigurationUnit* will satisfy the constraint.
- 1428 See the *ResultingChangeType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.2].
- 1429 ▪ **Artifacts:** When the *ConfigurationUnit* is a singleton defined outside of a *CompositeInstallable*, it
- 1430 MUST define at least one artifact element. The inclusion of an artifact element in a singleton
- 1431 *ConfigurationUnit* implies support for the associated operation.
- 1432 When the *ConfigurationUnit* is defined within a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST define exactly one
- 1433 artifact. The artifact defined MUST be a *ConfigArtifact* and it MUST support the single top level
- 1434 operation defined by the *CompositeInstallable*.
- 1435 See the *ConfigurationArtifactsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.5].
- 1436 ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
- 1437 log and trace messages.
- 1438 ▪ **targetResourceRef:** The *targetResourceRef* attribute identifies the resource in *Topology* that will
- 1439 process the *ConfigurationUnit's* artifacts to configure the resources identified by the
- 1440 *ConfigurationUnit's* *ResultingChange* definition.
- 1441 This value MUST match an *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.

1442 **4.3.3 ArtifactType**



1443  
1444 **Figure 21: ArtifactType structure.**

1445 *ArtifactType* elements define the files, arguments and other information required to perform a particular

1446 deployment operation. Every artifact that can be defined in a content element is an instance of

1447 *ArtifactType*. These are *InstallArtifact*, *UpdateArtifact*, *UndoArtifact*, *UninstallArtifact*, *RepairArtifact* and

1448 *ConfigArtifact*.

1449 **4.3.3.1 ArtifactType Property Summary**

| Name              | Type                   | *    | Description  |
|-------------------|------------------------|------|--|
| Arguments         | ArgumentListType       | 0..1 | Arguments used during processing of the artifact.                                      |
| OutputVariables   | OutputVariableListType | 0..1 | Variables whose values are set during processing of the artifact.                      |
| AdditionalContent | AdditionalContentType  | 0..* | Additional content files that are part of the artifact.                                |
|                   | xsd:any                | 0..* |  |
| contentRef        | xsd:token              | 0..1 | The primary artifact file. Not used if resourceRef is used.                            |
| resourceRef       | xsd:IDREF              | 0..1 | The resulting resource representing the artifact file. Not used if contentRef is used. |
| type              | ArtifactTypeNameType   | 0..1 | Type of the primary artifact file.   |
| weight            | xsd:positiveInteger    | 0..1 | The time required to process this artifact relative to all other artifacts in the SDD. |
|                   | xsd:anyAttribute       | 0..* |  |

1450 **4.3.3.2 ArtifactType Property Usage Notes**

- 1451     ▪ **Arguments:** Inputs to the processing of the artifact MUST be specified by defining an *Arguments*  
1452     element. All required inputs MUST be included in the arguments list. There are no implied arguments.  
1453         For example, there is no implication that the selected required resource instances will be passed  
1454         with an *InstallArtifact* on the install operation. If knowledge of those selections is required,  
1455         instance identifiers should be passed as arguments.
- 1456     When one *Argument* refers to the *OutputVariable* of another artifact, the output value must be  
1457     available at the time of processing the dependent artifact.
- 1458         For example, an artifact in a content element that is conditioned on the operating system being  
1459         Linux should not refer to the output of an artifact in a content element conditioned on the  
1460         operating system being Windows™<sup>3</sup>.
- 1461     A *Dependency* requirement MUST be defined between the content elements to indicate that the  
1462     artifact that defines the output variable is a pre-requisite of the content element with the dependent  
1463     artifact.
- 1464     See the *ArgumentListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.8].
- 1465     ▪ **OutputVariables:** *OutputVariables* are variables whose values are set by artifact processing.  
1466     *OutputVariables* can also be useful in log and trace messages.  
1467     See the *OutputVariableListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.10].

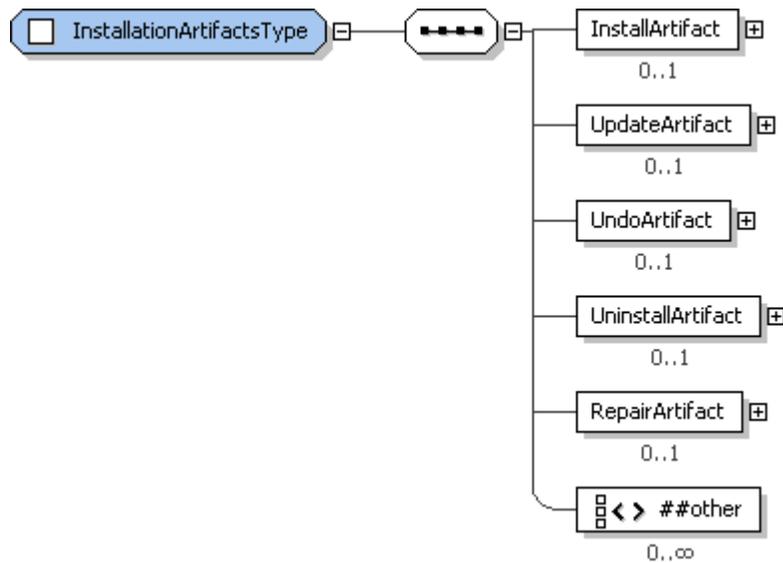
---

<sup>3</sup> Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

- 1468   ▪ **AdditionalContent:** *AdditionalContent* elements MUST be defined when supporting files are needed  
1469   by the artifact for this operation. The content file reference is specified via the *contentRef* attribute of  
1470   *AdditionalContent*.
- 1471   See the *AdditionalContentType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.12].
- 1472   ▪ **contentRef:** The value MUST be a reference to the *id* of the primary artifact file defined in a *Content*  
1473   element in the package descriptor.
- 1474   Note that it is valid to have no artifact file and drive the operation from arguments alone.
- 1475   When more than one artifact file is needed, *contentRef* points to the primary artifact file and  
1476   *AdditionalContent.contentRef* points to any other files used during application of the content element.  
1477   When *resourceRef* is defined, *contentRef* MUST NOT be defined.
- 1478   ▪ **resourceRef:** Sometimes, artifact files are created during a deployment rather than being contained  
1479   in the package.
- 1480         For example, some install programs create an uninstall program when the software is deployed.  
1481         The uninstall program is the artifact file that is needed by the *UninstallArtifact*, but is created by,  
1482         but not contained in, the package. In this case, the created artifact file is represented as a  
1483         *ResultingResource*.
- 1484   An *Artifact* element that defines *resourceRef* identifies the resulting resource as its artifact file.  
1485   When *contentRef* is defined, *resourceRef* MUST NOT be defined.
- 1486   The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.
- 1487   ▪ **type:** The *type* attribute identifies the format of the artifact file or files. When there is no artifact file  
1488   identified, *type* MAY be left undefined. If there is an artifact file or additional files defined, *type* MUST  
1489   be defined.
- 1490   Values for this attribute are not defined by this specification. *ArtifactTypeNameType* restricts *type* to  
1491   valid *xsd:QNames*.
- 1492   ▪ **weight:** Defining weights for all artifacts and referenced packages in an SDD provides useful  
1493   information to software that manages deployment. The weight of the artifact refers to the relative time  
1494   taken to deploy the artifact with respect to other artifacts and referenced packages in this SDD.
- 1495         For example, if the artifact takes three times as long to deploy as another artifact whose weight is  
1496         “2”, then the weight would be “6”. The weight numbers have no meaning in isolation and do not  
1497         describe actual time elapsed. They simply provide an estimate of relative time.

1498

### 4.3.4 InstallationArtifactsType



1499

1500 **Figure 22: InstallationArtifactsType structure.**

1501 *InstallationArtifactsType* provides the type definition for the *Artifacts* element of *InstallableUnit* and  
 1502 *LocalizationUnit*. At least one *Artifact* element MUST be defined. Within a *CompositeInstallable* definition,  
 1503 exactly one *Artifact* element MUST be defined.

#### 1504 4.3.4.1 InstallationArtifactsType Property Summary

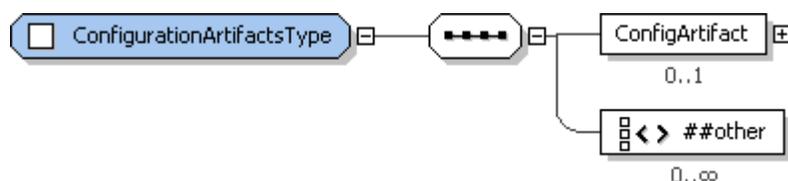
| Name              | Type         | *    | Description                       |
|-------------------|--------------|------|-----------------------------------|
| InstallArtifact   | ArtifactType | 0..1 | Artifact for install operation.   |
| UpdateArtifact    | ArtifactType | 0..1 | Artifact for update operation.    |
| UndoArtifact      | ArtifactType | 0..1 | Artifact for undo operation.      |
| UninstallArtifact | ArtifactType | 0..1 | Artifact for uninstall operation. |
| RepairArtifact    | ArtifactType | 0..1 | Artifact for repair operation.    |
|                   | xsd:any      | 0..* |                                   |

#### 1505 4.3.4.2 InstallationArtifactsType Property Usage Notes

- 1506 ▪ **InstallArtifact:** The *InstallArtifact* element declares deployment information sufficient to enable the  
 1507 target resource to perform an install using the named artifact files. The *ResultingResource* and  
 1508 *ResultingChange* elements describe the characteristics of the new or modified resource(s).  
 1509 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].
- 1510 ▪ **UpdateArtifact:** The *UpdateArtifact* element declares deployment information sufficient to enable the  
 1511 target resource to perform an update using the named artifact files. The *RequiredBase* element  
 1512 defines the resource(s) that can be updated. The *ResultingResource* and *ResultingChange* elements  
 1513 describe the updated characteristics of the resource(s).  
 1514 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].
- 1515 ▪ **UndoArtifact:** The *UndoArtifact* element declares deployment information sufficient to enable the  
 1516 target resource to undo an update. This undo will put the resource back to a previous level.  
 1517 The update that can be undone is described in the *RequiredBase* element. The *ResultingResource*  
 1518 definition can be used to describe the state of the resource(s) after the undo completes.

- 1519 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].
- 1520 ▪ **UninstallArtifact:** The *UninstallArtifact* element declares deployment information sufficient to enable  
1521 the target resource to perform an uninstall.
- 1522 If an *InstallArtifact* is defined in the same *InstallableUnit*, the *ResultingResource* element defines the  
1523 resource(s) that will be uninstalled.
- 1524 When an *UninstallArtifact* is the only artifact defined for an *InstallableUnit*, the *RequiredBase* MUST  
1525 be defined to declare the resource(s) that will be uninstalled. The *ResultingResource* element MUST  
1526 be left blank because the result of the uninstall is that the resource(s) are removed.
- 1527 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].
- 1528 ▪ **RepairArtifact:** The *RepairArtifact* element declares deployment information sufficient to enable the  
1529 target resource to repair an installation.
- 1530 If an *InstallArtifact* is defined in the same *InstallableUnit*, the *ResultingResource* element defines the  
1531 resource(s) that will be repaired.
- 1532 When a *RepairArtifact* is the only artifact defined for an *InstallableUnit*, the *RequiredBase* MUST be  
1533 defined to declare the resource(s) that will be repaired.
- 1534 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].

### 1535 4.3.5 ConfigurationArtifactsType



1536  
1537 **Figure 23: ConfigurationArtifactsType structure.**

1538 *ConfigurationArtifactsType* provides the type definition for the *Artifacts* element of *ConfigurationUnit*.

#### 1539 4.3.5.1 ConfigurationArtifactsType Property Summary

| Name           | Type         | *    | Description                       |
|----------------|--------------|------|-----------------------------------|
| ConfigArtifact | ArtifactType | 0..1 | Artifact for configure operation. |
|                | xsd:any      | 0..* |                                   |

#### 1540 4.3.5.2 ConfigurationArtifactsType Property Usage Notes

- 1541 ▪ **ConfigArtifact:** The *ConfigArtifact* element declares deployment information sufficient to allow the  
1542 target resource to configure the resources identified in the content element's *ResultingChange*  
1543 elements.
- 1544 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].

### 1545 4.3.6 OperationListType

1546 This simple type extends the `xsd:list` type as defined in [XSD], and adds the restriction that each  
1547 value in the list must be one of the operations from the enumeration defined by *OperationType* [4.3.7].

### 1548 4.3.7 OperationType

1549 Operations are used in the SDD to associate requirements and completion actions with particular  
1550 artifacts.

1551 For example, when a requirement defines an *operation* attribute with value *undo*, it is a statement that  
1552 the requirement must be met prior to processing of the undo artifact.

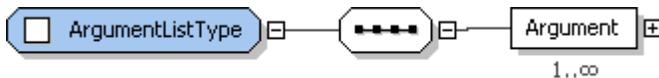
1553 *OperationType* enumerates the basic resource lifecycle operations that use the content and information  
 1554 defined in the SDD to change the state of the resources being installed, updated, or configured.

### 1555 4.3.7.1 OperationType Property Usage Notes

1556 Elements and attributes of *OperationType* MUST be set to one of the following values:

- 1557 ▪ **configure**: Uses the *ConfigArtifact* to perform configuration actions on a resource.
- 1558 ▪ **install**: Uses the *InstallArtifact* to install resources.
- 1559 ▪ **repair**: Uses the *RepairArtifact* to repair an installation.
- 1560 ▪ **undo**: Uses the *UndoArtifact* to restore a resource to the state before the most recent update was  
 1561 applied.
- 1562 ▪ **update**: Uses the *UpdateArtifact* to update an existing instance of a resource, as specified by the  
 1563 required base.
- 1564 ▪ **use**: Associates a requirement or completion action with use of the deployed software resources.  
 1565 Setting the operation attribute to *use* indicates that the requirement or completion action is not  
 1566 associated with an artifact.
- 1567 ▪ **uninstall**: Uses the *UninstallArtifact* to uninstall a resource.

### 1568 4.3.8 ArgumentListType



1569  
 1570 **Figure 24: ArgumentListType structure.**

1571 Each artifact MAY optionally include an *Arguments* element whose type is provided by *ArgumentListType*.  
 1572 This simply defines a list of *Argument* elements.

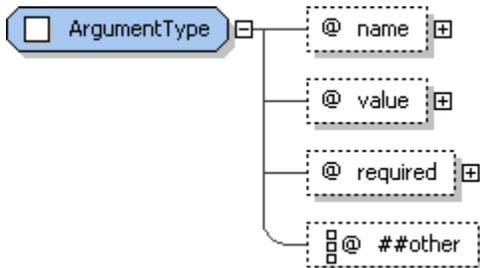
#### 1573 4.3.8.1 ArgumentListType Property Summary

| Name     | Type         | *    | Description                      |
|----------|--------------|------|----------------------------------|
| Argument | ArgumentType | 1..* | An input to artifact processing. |

#### 1574 4.3.8.2 ArgumentListType Property Usage Notes

- 1575 ▪ **Argument**: An argument value is a variable expression used to define a fixed value for the argument  
 1576 or to define a value in terms of one of the variables visible to the artifact.
- 1577 See the *ArgumentType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.9].

### 1578 4.3.9 ArgumentType



1579  
 1580 **Figure 25: ArgumentType structure.**

1581 *ArgumentType* provides the type definition for *Argument* elements in artifacts [4.3.3]. This complex type is  
 1582 used to declare the argument name and optionally include a value for that argument.

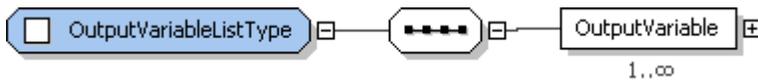
1583 **4.3.9.1 ArgumentType Property Summary**

| Name     | Type                   | *    | Description   |
|----------|------------------------|------|---|
| name     | VariableExpressionType | 1    | The argument name.  |
| value    | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | The argument value.   |
| required | xsd:boolean            | 0..1 | Indicates that the argument value must result in a valid expression for each particular deployment.<br>**default value="true" |
|          | xsd:anyAttribute       | 0..* |   |

1584 **4.3.9.2 ArgumentType Property Usage Notes**

- 1585 ▪ **name:** Evaluation of the *name* expression produces the name of the argument. This can be useful for  
1586 arguments with only a name, for example, those that are not name-value pairs.  
1587 When the argument name alone is sufficient to communicate its meaning, the argument value  
1588 SHOULD be omitted.  
1589 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1590 ▪ **value:** Evaluation of the *value* expression provides the value of the argument.  
1591 The variable expression MAY be used to define a fixed value for the argument or to define a value in  
1592 terms of one of the variables visible to the artifact.  
1593 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1594 ▪ **required:** In cases where the argument should be ignored when the value expression is not valid for  
1595 a particular deployment, set required to "false".

1596 **4.3.10 OutputVariableListType**



1597  
1598 **Figure 26: OutputVariableListType structure.**

1599 An artifact can set variables. The variables set by the artifact are defined in the artifact's *OutputVariables*.

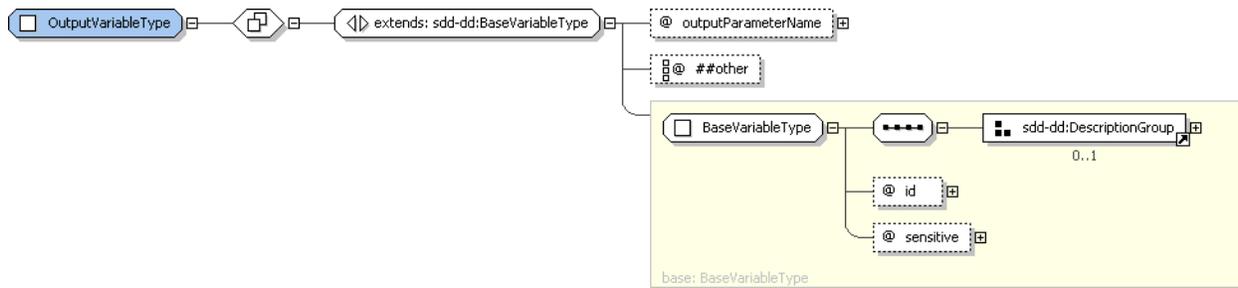
1600 **4.3.10.1 OutputVariableListType Property Summary**

| Name           | Type               | *    | Description                         |
|----------------|--------------------|------|-------------------------------------|
| OutputVariable | OutputVariableType | 1..* | An output from artifact processing. |

1601 **4.3.10.2 OutputVariableListType Property Usage Notes**

- 1602 ▪ **OutputVariable:** This is the definition of the variable, not a reference to a variable defined elsewhere.  
1603 See the *OutputVariableType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.11].

1604 **4.3.11 OutputVariableType**



1605  
1606 **Figure 27: OutputVariableType structure.**

1607 Output variables are variables whose value is set by artifact processing. *OutputVariableType* extends  
1608 *BaseVariableType* and so has all of the attributes defined there, including an *id* attribute that is used to  
1609 refer to the output variable within the SDD. Output variables can be useful in log and trace messages.

1610 **4.3.11.1 OutputVariableType Property Summary**

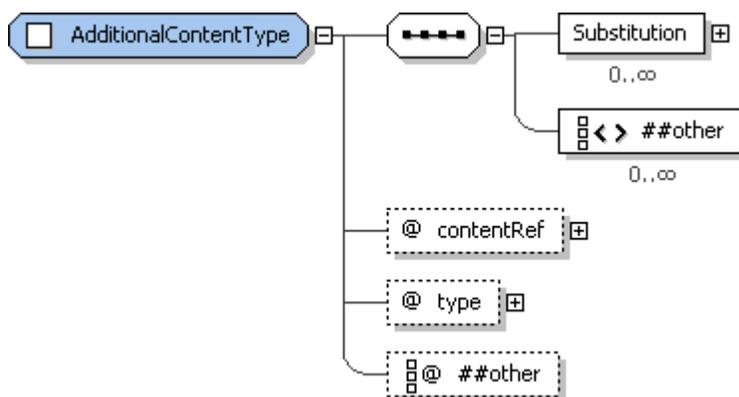
| Name                | Type                       | *    | Description   |
|---------------------|----------------------------|------|---|
|                     | [extends] BaseVariableType |      | See the BaseVariableType section for additional properties [4.6.2]. |
| outputParameterName | xsd:NCName                 | 0..1 | An output from artifact processing.                                 |
|                     | xsd:anyAttribute           | 0..* |   |

1611 **4.3.11.2 OutputVariableType Property Usage Notes**

1612 See the *BaseVariableType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.2].

- 1613 ▪ **outputParameterName:** This is the name of the output variable as understood within the artifact  
1614 processing environment. The output value is associated with the output variable's *id*. The SDD author  
1615 uses this *id* within the SDD to refer to this output value.

1616 **4.3.12 AdditionalContentType**



1617  
1618 **Figure 28: AdditionalContentType structure.**

1619 When artifact processing requires more than a single file, the artifact declaration includes information  
1620 about the additional files needed. *AdditionalContentType* provides the type definition. Additional content  
1621 MAY include input files that need to be edited to include values received as input to a particular solution  
1622 deployment. In this case, the additional file can include a *Substitution* element.

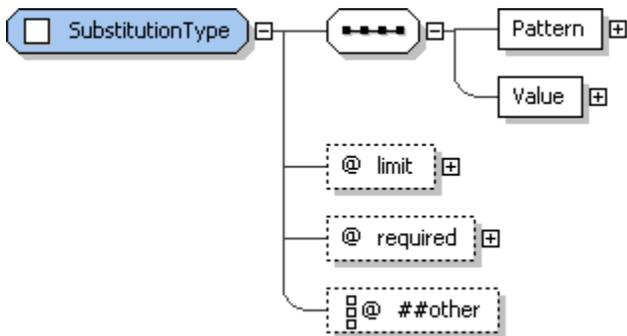
1623 **4.3.12.1 AdditionalContentType Property Summary**

| Name         | Type                 | *    | Description  |
|--------------|----------------------|------|--|
| Substitution | SubstitutionType     | 0..* | A value to substitute into the file.                                       |
|              | xsd:any              | 0..* |  |
| contentRef   | xsd:token            | 1    | A reference to the content element's id defined in the package descriptor. |
| type         | ArtifactTypeNameType | 0..1 | Type of the additional artifact file.                                      |
|              | xsd:anyAttribute     | 0..* |  |

1624 **4.3.12.2 AdditionalContentType Property Usage Notes**

- 1625 **Substitution:** The *Substitution* element supports the use of files that require some editing before they  
 1626 can be used in artifact processing. The definitions in this element support placement of values  
 1627 determined during a particular deployment into the file identified by the *contentRef* attribute.  
 1628 See the *SubstitutionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.13].
- 1629 **contentRef:** The *contentRef* attribute points back to the package descriptor for information about the  
 1630 physical file. This value **MUST** match an *id* of a content element in the package descriptor.
- 1631 **type:** The *type* attribute identifies the format of the additional file. Values for this attribute are not  
 1632 defined by this specification. *ArtifactTypeNameType* restricts values of *type* to valid `xsd:QNames`.

1633 **4.3.13 SubstitutionType**



1634  
 1635 **Figure 29: SubstitutionType structure.**

1636 *SubstitutionType* provides the type definition for the *Substitution* element in *AdditionalContent*  
 1637 declarations. It enables declaration of patterns in the file and the values that should replace the patterns  
 1638 before the file is used in artifact processing.

1639 **4.3.13.1 SubstitutionType Property Summary**

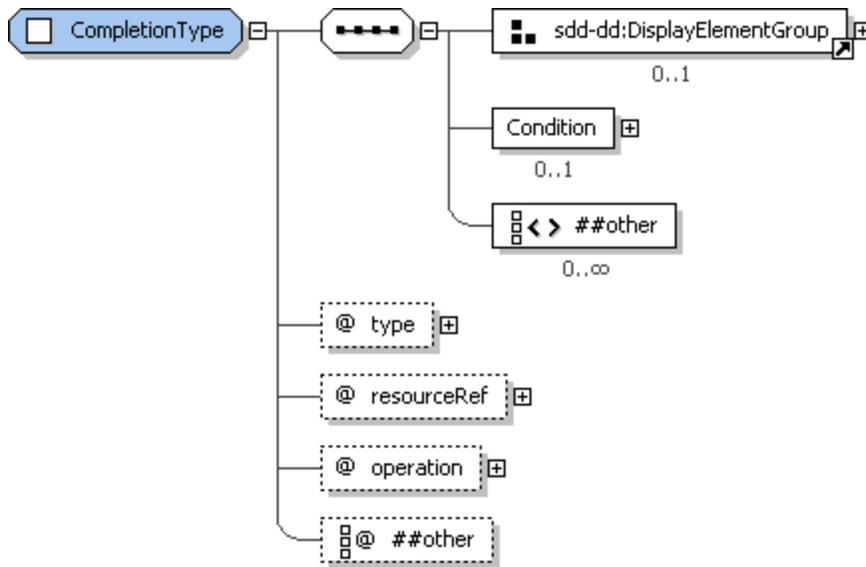
| Name     | Type                   | *    | Description   |
|----------|------------------------|------|---|
| Pattern  | xsd:string             | 1    | The search pattern in the file that needs to be substituted.  |
| Value    | VariableExpressionType | 1    | The value to be substituted in the file.  |
| limit    | xsd:positiveInteger    | 0..1 | The number of substitutions that should be made.  |
| required | xsd:boolean            | 0..1 | Indicates that substitution's value must result in a valid expression for each particular deployment.<br>**default value="true" |

|                  |      |
|------------------|------|
| xsd:anyAttribute | 0..* |
|------------------|------|

1640 **4.3.13.2 SubstitutionType Property Usage Notes**

- 1641 ▪ **Pattern:** This is the string that will be replaced with the value when found in the file.
- 1642 ▪ **Value:** Evaluation of the variable expression results in the value that will be substituted for the
- 1643 pattern.
- 1644 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1645 ▪ **limit:** If *limit* is not defined, there is no limit and all instances of the pattern found in the file will be
- 1646 replaced.
- 1647 ▪ **required:** In cases where the substitution should be ignored when the value expression is not valid
- 1648 for a particular deployment, set *required* to "false".

1649 **4.3.14 CompletionType**



1650  
1651 **Figure 30: CompletionType structure.**

1652 For some deployments certain completion actions such as restart and logoff are required before a  
1653 deployment operation using a particular content element can be considered complete. The  
1654 *CompletionType* elements enable the SDD author to indicate either that one of these actions is required  
1655 or that one of these actions will be performed by the associated artifact.

1656 **4.3.14.1 CompletionType Property Summary**

| Name             | Type                    | *    | Description  |
|------------------|-------------------------|------|--|
| DisplayName      | DisplayTextType         | 0..1 | Name of the completion action.                                     |
| Description      | DisplayTextType         | 0..1 | Description of the completion action.                              |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType         | 0..1 | Short description of the completion action.                        |
| Condition        | ConditionType           | 0..1 | Conditions that determine when the completion action will be used. |
|                  | xsd:any                 | 0..* |  |
| type             | CompletionTypeNamesType | 1    | The type of the completion action.                                 |

|             |                   |      |  |
|-------------|-------------------|------|--|
| resourceRef | xsd:IDREF         | 1    | The resource where the completion action will be executed.                   |
| operation   | OperationListType | 1    | Associates a completion action with the processing of a particular artifact. |
|             | xsd:anyAttribute  | 0..* |  |

#### 1657 4.3.14.2 CompletionType Property Usage Notes

- 1658   ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
1659   MUST provide a label for the *Completion* element.

1660   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

- 1661   ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
1662   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the *Completion* element.

1663   The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.

1664   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

- 1665   ▪ **Condition:** *Conditions* specified on resource characteristics determine if the completion action  
1666   applies. If the conditions are met, the action applies. If not met, then the action is not needed. Unmet  
1667   conditions are not considered a failure. When no conditions are defined, the action always applies.

1668   See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

- 1669   ▪ **type:** This is the completion action that applies when conditions defined in *ResourceConstraint* are  
1670   met. Allowed values defined in *CompletionTypeNameType* are:

1671       • **restartRequiredImmediately:** A system restart is required before the deployment operation  
1672       is considered complete and the artifact associated with the operation does not perform the  
1673       restart. The restart MUST happen before further deployment actions are taken.

1674       • **restartRequiredBeforeUse:** A system restart is required before the deployment operation is  
1675       considered complete and the artifact associated with the operation does not perform this  
1676       action. The restart MUST happen before the associated resources are used.

1677       • **restartOccurs:** The artifact associated with the lifecycle operation will initiate a system  
1678       restart.

1679       • **logoffRequired:** A logoff and logon to the user account is required before the deployment  
1680       operation is considered complete and the artifact associated with the operation does not  
1681       perform this action. The logoff and logon MUST happen before the operation can be  
1682       considered complete.

- 1683   ▪ **resourceRef:** This will often be the resource named as the target resource for the defining content  
1684   element.

1685   The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.

- 1686   ▪ **operation:** A completion action is associated with the processing of one artifact by setting *operation*  
1687   to the operation associated with that artifact. The element that defines the *Completion* MUST also  
1688   define an artifact associated with the operation defined for the *Completion* element.

1689   See the *OperationListType* section for *operation* enumerations and their meaning [4.3.6].

## 1690 4.4 Constraints

1691   The SDD author needs to communicate constraints on resources for a variety of purposes.

- 1692   ▪ Some constraints must be met for the requirements of a content element to be met. See the  
1693   *RequirementsType* section [4.7.1].

- 1694   ▪ Other constraints must be met for a resource to serve as the required base for an update. See the  
1695   *RequiredBaseType* section [4.7.8].

- 1696   ▪ Still others must be met for to satisfy a condition that determines the applicability of a content element  
1697   or completion action. See the *ConditionType* section [4.5.1] and the *CompletionType* section [4.3.14].

1698 The *Constraint* types described in this section support identification of resource constraints in these  
 1699 various contexts. These types are:

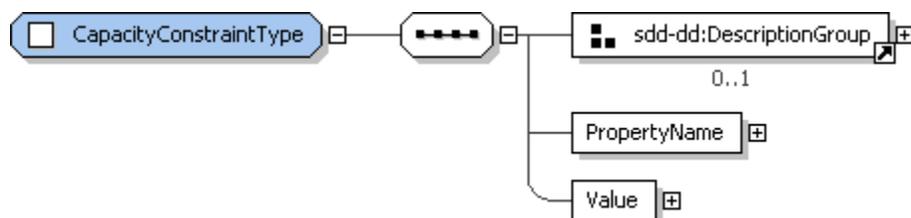
- 1700 ▪ *CapacityConstraint*
- 1701 ▪ *ConsumptionConstraint*
- 1702 ▪ *PropertyConstraint*
- 1703 ▪ *VersionConstraint*
- 1704 ▪ *UniquenessConstraint*
- 1705 ▪ *RelationshipConstraint*

1706 All of these constraint types are constraints on a property of a resource. There are different constraint  
 1707 types because there are distinct semantics for different types of resource properties. Examples of these  
 1708 varying semantics include constraints that the property value be:

- 1709 • within a certain range;
- 1710 • one of a set of values;
- 1711 • all of a set of values;
- 1712 • equal to a certain value;
- 1713 • no more than or no less than a certain value;
- 1714 • no more than or no less than a certain value when all constraints of that type are added  
 1715 together.

1716 In all cases, deployment software must be able to discover the property's value to honor the SDD author's  
 1717 intent.

#### 1718 4.4.1 CapacityConstraintType



1719  
 1720 **Figure 31: CapacityConstraintType structure.**

1721 *CapacityConstraintType* provides the type definition of the *Capacity* elements of  
 1722 *RequirementResourceConstraintType* [4.7.5]. These elements are used to express a requirement on the  
 1723 capacity of a particular resource property such as memory available from an operating system. Capacity  
 1724 is shared: multiple capacity constraints expressed on the same property are evaluated individually without  
 1725 assuming any change to the available quantity of the property.

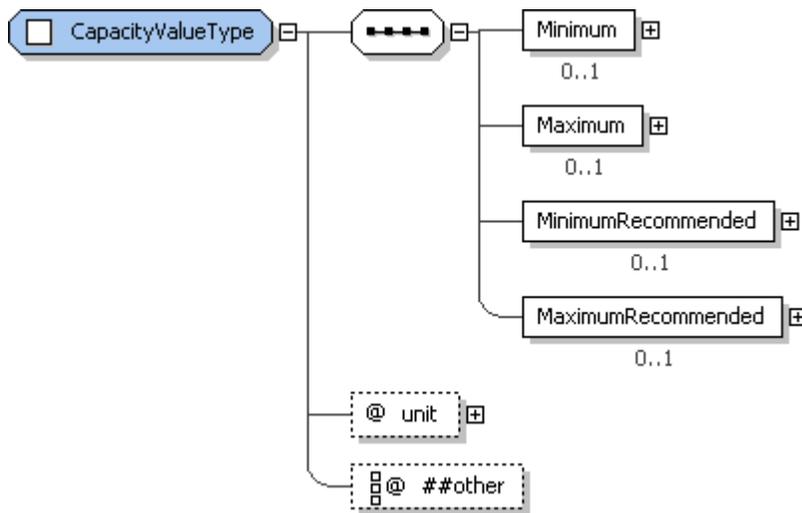
##### 1726 4.4.1.1 CapacityConstraintType Property Summary

| Name             | Type              | *    | Description  |
|------------------|-------------------|------|--|
| Description      | DisplayTextType   | 0..1 | A description of the capacity constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined. |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType   | 0..1 | A short description of the capacity constraint.                                    |
| PropertyName     | xsd:QName         | 1    | Name of the constrained property.  |
| Value            | CapacityValueType | 1    | Bounds on the value of the constrained property.                                   |

1727 **4.4.1.2 CapacityConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 1728 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
1729 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the capacity constraint on the resource.  
1730 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
1731 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 1732 ▪ **PropertyName:** This name corresponds to the name of the constrained resource property in the  
1733 environment. This name may be specified in profiles [5.3].
- 1734 ▪ **Value:** *Value* specifies the bound and optional recommended bound on the resource property  
1735 identified in the *PropertyName* element.  
1736 See the *CapacityValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.2].

1737 **4.4.2 CapacityValueType**



1738  
1739 **Figure 32: CapacityValueType structure.**

1740 Capacity value is expressed in terms of a minimum or maximum capacity. *CapacityValueType* provides  
1741 the elements that support this expression. It also supports expression of a recommended minimum or  
1742 maximum capacity.

1743 **4.4.2.1 CapacityValueType Property Summary**

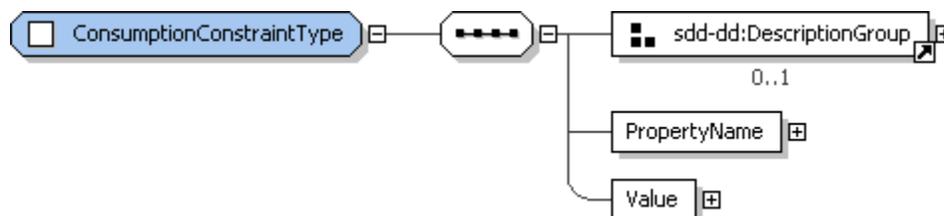
| Name               | Type                   | *    | Description   |
|--------------------|------------------------|------|---|
| Minimum            | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | Minimum capacity.                                     |
| Maximum            | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | Maximum capacity.                                     |
| MinimumRecommended | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | Minimum recommended capacity.                         |
| MaximumRecommended | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | Maximum recommended capacity.                         |
| unit               | xsd:string             | 0..1 | Unit of measure used to interpret the capacity value. |
|                    | xsd:anyAttribute       | 0..* |   |

1744 **4.4.2.2 CapacityValueType Property Usage Notes**

- 1745 ▪ **Minimum:** There will usually be either a minimum value or a maximum value defined, but not both.  
1746 When minimum is specified, the actual value of the capacity property MUST be equal to or greater  
1747 than the minimum value.

- 1748 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1749 ▪ **Maximum:** When specified, the actual value of the capacity property MUST be less than or equal to  
1750 the defined maximum.
- 1751 If *Minimum* and *Maximum* are both defined, *Minimum* MUST be less than or equal to *Maximum*.
- 1752 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1753 ▪ **MinimumRecommended:** The SDD author can indicate a preferred, but not required, minimum by  
1754 defining a value for this element.
- 1755 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1756 ▪ **MaximumRecommended:** The SDD author can indicate a preferred, but not required, maximum by  
1757 defining a value for this element.
- 1758 If *MinimumRecommended* and *MaximumRecommended* are both defined, *MinimumRecommended*  
1759 MUST be less than or equal to *MaximumRecommended*.
- 1760 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1761 ▪ **unit:** Values for *unit* SHOULD be well-known units of measure from the International System of Units  
1762 **[UNIT]**. A unit of measure SHOULD be specified for all properties that are measured in any kind of  
1763 unit.

### 1764 4.4.3 ConsumptionConstraintType



1765  
1766 **Figure 33: ConsumptionConstraintType structure.**

1767 *ConsumptionConstraintType* provides the type definition of the *Consumption* elements of  
1768 *RequirementResourceConstraintType* [4.7.5]. These elements are used to express a requirement on the  
1769 available quantity of a particular resource property such as disk space on a file system.  
1770 *ConsumptionConstraints* represent exclusive use of the defined quantity of the resource property. In other  
1771 words, consumption constraints are additive, with each consumption constraint specified in the SDD  
1772 adding to the total requirement for the specified resource(s). A consumption constraint is assumed to alter  
1773 the available quantity such that the portion of the property used to satisfy one constraint is not available to  
1774 satisfy another consumption constraint on the same property.

1775 For example, suppose that the target file system has 80 megabytes available. The application of a  
1776 content element's *InstallArtifact* results in installation of files that use 5 megabytes of file space. The  
1777 application of a second *InstallArtifact* results in installation of files that use 2 megabytes of file space.  
1778 Consumption constraints are additive, so the total space used for this content element is 7  
1779 megabytes, leaving 73 (80–7) megabytes available on the target file system.

#### 1780 4.4.3.1 ConsumptionConstraintType Property Summary

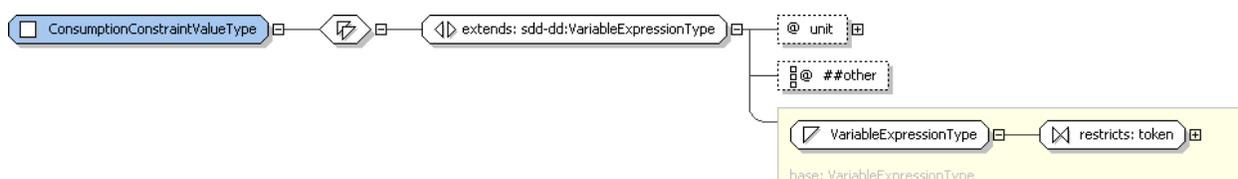
| Name             | Type                           | *    | Description   |
|------------------|--------------------------------|------|---|
| Description      | DisplayTextType                | 0..1 | A description of the consumption constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined. |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType                | 0..1 | A short description of the consumption constraint.                                    |
| PropertyName     | xsd:QName                      | 1    | Names the resource property to test.  |
| Value            | ConsumptionConstraintValueType | 1    | A variable expression defining the minimum available                                  |

|  |  |  |           |
|--|--|--|-----------|
|  |  |  | quantity. |
|--|--|--|-----------|

### 1781 4.4.3.2 ConsumptionConstraintType Property Usage Notes

- 1782 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
1783 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the consumption constraint on the resource.  
1784 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
1785 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 1786 ▪ **PropertyName:** The property name can be used to find the property value in the deployment  
1787 environment. This name may be specified in profiles [5.3].
- 1788 ▪ **Value:** The result of evaluating this variable expression represents the minimum quantity of the  
1789 named resource property that MUST be available for successful deployment of the defining content  
1790 element's artifacts. This quantity will be consumed by application of the associated artifact.  
1791 See the *ConsumptionConstraintValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.4].

### 1792 4.4.4 ConsumptionConstraintValueType



1793  
1794 **Figure 34: ConsumptionConstraintValueType structure.**

1795 A consumption value is defined using a variable expression. *ConsumptionConstraintValueType* provides  
1796 the variable expression by extending *VariableExpressionType*.

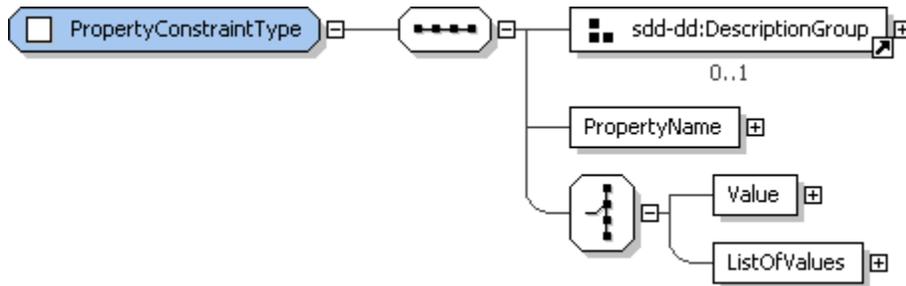
### 1797 4.4.4.1 ConsumptionConstraintValueType Property Summary

| Name | Type                             | *    | Description   |
|------|----------------------------------|------|---|
|      | [extends] VariableExpressionType |      | See the VariableExpressionType section for additional properties [4.6.1]. |
| unit | xsd:string                       | 0..1 | Unit of measure used to interpret the consumption value.                  |
|      | xsd:anyAttribute                 | 0..* |   |

### 1798 4.4.4.2 ConsumptionConstraintValueType Property Usage Notes

- 1799 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.1].
- 1800 ▪ **unit:** Values for *unit* SHOULD be well-known units of measure from International System of Units  
1801 **[UNIT]**. A unit of measure SHOULD be specified for all properties which are measured in any kind of  
1802 unit.

1803 **4.4.5 PropertyConstraintType**



1804  
1805 **Figure 35: PropertyConstraintType structure.**

1806 *PropertyConstraintType* provides the type definition of the *Property* elements of  
1807 *RequirementResourceConstraintType* [4.7.5]. It supports definition of a required value or set of  
1808 acceptable values for a particular resource property.

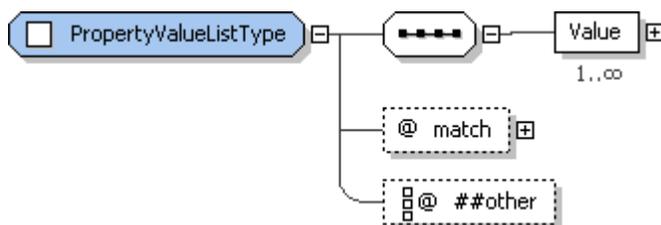
1809 **4.4.5.1 PropertyConstraintType Property Summary**

| Name             | Type                   | *    | Description  |
|------------------|------------------------|------|--|
| Description      | DisplayTextType        | 0..1 | A description of the property constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined. |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType        | 0..1 | A short description of the property constraint.                                    |
| PropertyName     | xsd:QName              | 1    | Name of the constrained property.  |
| Value            | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | Required property value.   |
| ListOfValues     | PropertyValueListType  | 0..1 | List of required property values.  |

1810 **4.4.5.2 PropertyConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 1811 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
1812 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the property constraint on the resource.  
1813 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
1814 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 1815 ▪ **PropertyName:** The property name can be used to find the property value in the deployment  
1816 environment. This name may be specified in profiles [5.3].
- 1817 ▪ **Value:** The result of evaluating this variable expression represents the required value of the named  
1818 resource property.  
1819 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1820 ▪ **ListOfValues:** A list of required values can be defined in place of a single required value.  
1821 See the *PropertyValueListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.6].

1822 **4.4.6 PropertyValueListType**



1823

1824 **Figure 36: PropertyValueListType structure.**

1825 A property value list is expressed as one or more strings representing valid values for the property.

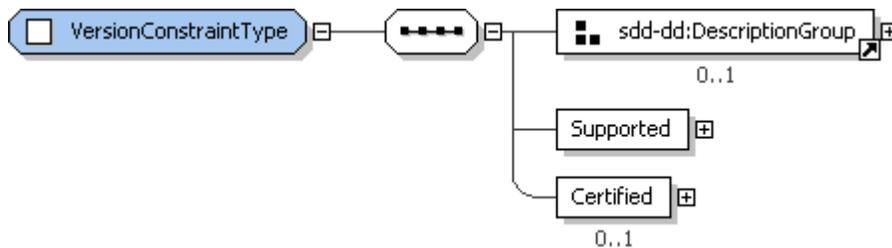
1826 **4.4.6.1 PropertyValueListType Property Summary**

| Name  | Type                   | *    | Description   |
|-------|------------------------|------|---|
| Value | VariableExpressionType | 1..* | A property value.   |
| match | PropertyMatchType      | 0..1 | Determines whether the actual property value must match any or all of the listed values.<br>**default value="any" |
|       | xsd:anyAttribute       | 0..* |   |

1827 **4.4.6.2 PropertyValueListType Property Usage Notes**

- 1828 ▪ **Value:** The result of this variable expression represents one possible required value of the named  
1829 resource property.
- 1830 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1831 ▪ **match:** The value or values of the property found in the deployment environment are compared to the  
1832 value or values listed in the property constraint. *PropertyMatchType* defines two enumerated values:  
1833 *any* and *all*. When *match* is set to *any*, the property constraint is considered met when any one of the  
1834 found property values matches any one of the declared property values. When *match* is set to *all*, the  
1835 constraint is considered met when all of the declared property values match values found for the  
1836 property.

1837 **4.4.7 VersionConstraintType**



1838 **Figure 37: VersionConstraintType structure.**

1839 *VersionConstraintType* provides the type definition of the *VersionConstraint* elements of  
1840 *RequirementResourceConstraintType* [4.7.5]. A *VersionConstraint* can define a set of individual versions  
1841 or ranges of versions that are supported and a similar set that are certified.

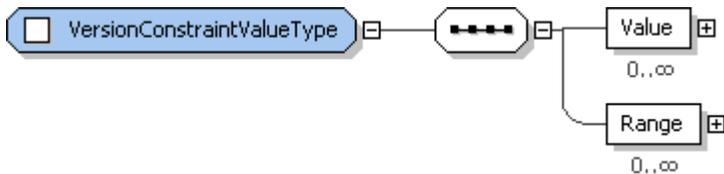
1843 **4.4.7.1 VersionConstraintType Property Summary**

| Name             | Type                       | *    | Description   |
|------------------|----------------------------|------|---|
| Description      | DisplayTextType            | 0..1 | A description of the version constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined. |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType            | 0..1 | A short description of the version constraint.                                    |
| Supported        | VersionConstraintValueType | 1    | A supported version or set of versions.   |
| Certified        | VersionConstraintValueType | 0..1 | A subset of the supported versions that are certified as tested.                  |

1844 **4.4.7.2 VersionConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 1845 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
1846 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the version constraint on the resource.  
1847 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
1848 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 1849 ▪ **Supported:** If the resource version is in the *Supported* set, it meets the requirements.  
1850 See the *VersionConstraintValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.8].
- 1851 ▪ **Certified:** In some cases the set of required versions may be different from the set of versions that  
1852 are certified by the manufacturer as thoroughly tested.  
1853 See the *VersionConstraintValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.8].

1854 **4.4.8 VersionConstraintValueType**



1855  
1856 **Figure 38: VersionConstraintValueType structure.**

1857 A version constraint can be specified using any number of individual version values in combination with  
1858 any number of version ranges.

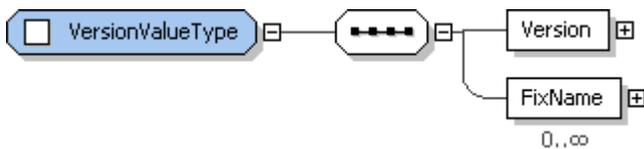
1859 **4.4.8.1 VersionConstraintValueType Property Summary**

| Name  | Type             | *    | Description   |
|-------|------------------|------|---|
| Value | VersionValueType | 0..* | A version value with associated fixes specified.                          |
| Range | VersionRangeType | 0..* | A range of version values with associated fixes specified for each range. |

1860 **4.4.8.2 VersionConstraintValueType Property Usage Notes**

- 1861 ▪ **Value:** Discrete version values can be defined when the set of required versions includes versions  
1862 that do not fall within a range. There is no assumption by this specification that version values are  
1863 numerically comparable. The method of comparing version values may be resource-specific.  
1864 See the *VersionValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.9].
- 1865 ▪ **Range:** See the *VersionRangeType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.10].

1866 **4.4.9 VersionValueType**



1867  
1868 **Figure 39: VersionValueType structure.**

1869 A version value includes a version and a list of required fixes associated with that version.

1870 **4.4.9.1 VersionValueType Property Summary**

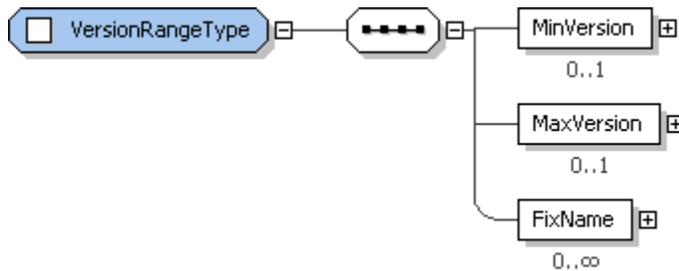
| Name | Type | * | Description |
|------|------|---|-------------|
|------|------|---|-------------|

|         |             |      |                             |
|---------|-------------|------|-----------------------------|
| Version | VersionType | 1    | An allowable version value. |
| FixName | xsd:string  | 0..* | The name of a fix.          |

1871 **4.4.9.2 VersionValueType Property Usage Notes**

- 1872
- 1873 ▪ **Version:** A string containing a single, exact version value. This is compared with the version value of specific resource instances. Only equal values satisfy this part of the constraint.
  - 1874 See the *VersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].
  - 1875 ▪ **FixName:** Any number of *FixName* elements can be defined, identifying fixes that must be discovered to be applied for the version constraint to be considered met.
  - 1876

1877 **4.4.10 VersionRangeType**



1878  
1879 **Figure 40: VersionRangeType structure.**

1880 A *VersionRange* is specified with a minimum and maximum version value and a list of required fixes associated with that range. The method of comparing version strings in a version range is resource-specific.

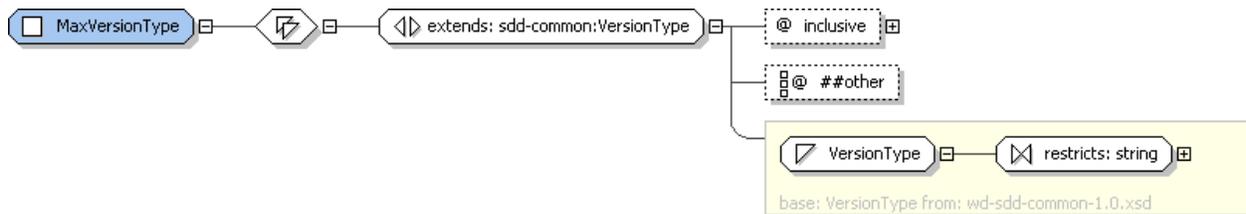
1883 **4.4.10.1 VersionRangeType Property Summary**

| Name       | Type           | *    | Description                           |
|------------|----------------|------|---------------------------------------|
| MinVersion | VersionType    | 0..1 | The least allowable version value.    |
| MaxVersion | MaxVersionType | 0..1 | The greatest allowable version value. |
| FixName    | xsd:string     | 0..* | The name of a fix.                    |

1884 **4.4.10.2 VersionRangeType Property Usage Notes**

- 1885 ▪ **MinVersion:** This is the lower bound of a version range. If *MinVersion* is defined but *MaxVersion* is not, there is no upper bound. A version that is equal to *MinVersion* is within the defined range.
- 1886 See the *VersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].
- 1887
- 1888 ▪ **MaxVersion:** This is the upper bound of a version range. If *MaxVersion* is defined but *MinVersion* is not, there is no lower bound. A version that is equal to *MaxVersion* may be within the defined range depending on the value specified for the *inclusive* attribute.
- 1889 See the *MaxVersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.11].
- 1890
- 1891
- 1892 ▪ **FixName:** Any number of *FixNames* can be defined identifying fixes that must be found to be applied for the version constraint is to be considered satisfied. This is true for all versions within the defined range.
- 1893
- 1894
- 1895 When *FixName* is defined, either a *MinVersion* or a *MaxVersion* element MUST also be defined.

1896 **4.4.11 MaxVersionType**



1897  
1898 **Figure 41: MaxVersionType structure.**

1899 A maximum version can be inclusive or exclusive.

1900 **4.4.11.1 MaxVersionType Property Summary**

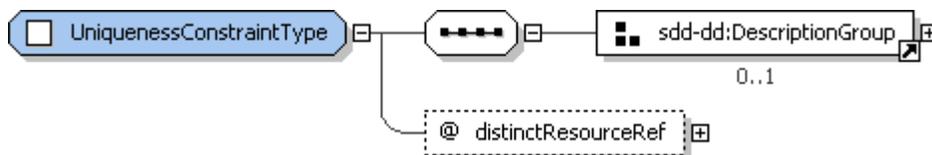
| Name      | Type                  | *    | Description  |
|-----------|-----------------------|------|--|
|           | [extends] VersionType |      | See the VersionType section for additional properties [3.10].  |
| inclusive | xsd:boolean           | 0..1 | Indicates whether the max version value is included in the supported range of versions.<br>**default value="false" |
|           | xsd:any               | 0..* |  |

1901 **4.4.11.2 MaxVersionType Property Usage Notes**

1902 See the *VersionType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [3.10].

- 1903 ▪ **inclusive:** The *inclusive* attribute allows the SDD author to choose the semantics of maximum  
1904 version. Supported ranges are often everything equal to or greater than the minimum version and up  
1905 to, but not including, the maximum version. Sometimes it is more convenient for the range to include  
1906 the maximum version.

1907 **4.4.12 UniquenessConstraintType**



1908  
1909 **Figure 42: UniquenessConstraintType structure.**

1910 A *UniquenessConstraint* is used to indicate when two resources defined in topology MUST or MUST NOT  
1911 resolve to the same resource instance during a particular deployment. A *UniquenessConstraint* indicates  
1912 that the two resources MUST NOT be the same when it is defined in a *ResourceConstraint* element with  
1913 testValue="true". A *UniquenessConstraint* indicates that the two resources MUST be the same when  
1914 defined in a *ResourceConstraint* with testValue="false".

1915 When no *UniquenessConstraint* is in scope for a particular pair of resources, the two resources MAY  
1916 resolve to the same resource when their identifying characteristics are the same and when all in-scope  
1917 constraints on both resources are satisfied.

1918 The first of the pair of resources is identified in the *resourceRef* attribute of the *ResourceConstraint*  
1919 element that defines the *UniquenessConstraint*. The second of the pair is identified in the  
1920 *distinctResourceRef* attribute of the *UniquenessConstraint*.

1921 **4.4.12.1 UniquenessConstraintType Property Summary**

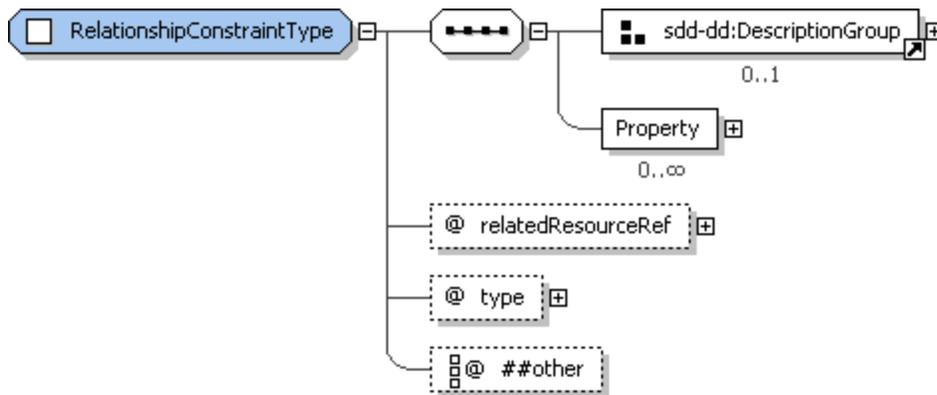
| Name | Type | * | Description |
|------|------|---|-------------|
|------|------|---|-------------|

|                     |                 |      |  |
|---------------------|-----------------|------|--|
| Description         | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | A description of the uniqueness constraint, for example what must or must not be unique and why. |
| ShortDescription    | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | A short description of the uniqueness constraint.  |
| distinctResourceRef | xsd:IDREF       | 1    | One of the pair of resources referred to by the constraint.                                      |

1922 **4.4.12.2 UniquenessConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 1923
- 1924
- 1925
- 1926
- 1927
- 1928
- **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the uniqueness constraint on the resource. The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined. See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
  - **distinctResourceRef:** The second resource in the pair of resources. The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.

1929 **4.4.13 RelationshipConstraintType**



1930

1931 **Figure 43: RelationshipConstraintType structure.**

1932 A *RelationshipConstraint* identifies a particular relationship between two resources that is constrained in  
 1933 some way by the SDD. The value of the *testValue* attribute of the *ResourceConstraint* that contains the  
 1934 *RelationshipConstraint* determines whether the constraint MUST be satisfied or MUST NOT be satisfied.  
 1935 The first resource of the pair is defined by the *resourceRef* attribute of the *ResourceConstraint* containing  
 1936 the *RelationshipConstraint*.

1937 **4.4.13.1 RelationshipConstraintType Property Summary**

| Name               | Type             | *    | Description  |
|--------------------|------------------|------|--|
| Description        | DisplayTextType  | 0..1 | A description of the relationship and its purpose in the overall solution. |
| ShortDescription   | DisplayTextType  | 0..1 | A short description of the relationship.                                   |
| Property           | PropertyType     | 0..* | A property constraint that further constrains the relationship.            |
| relatedResourceRef | xsd:IDREF        | 0..1 | The second resource in the relationship.                                   |
| type               | xsd:QName        | 1    | The type of the relationship.  |
|                    | xsd:anyAttribute | 0..* |  |

1938 **4.4.13.2 RelationshipConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 1939
- 1940
- 1941
- 1942
- 1943
- 1944
- 1945
- 1946
- 1947
- 1948
- 1949
- 1950
- 1951
- **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the relationship constraint on the resource. The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined. See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
  - **Property:** This element MAY be used to provide additional constraints on the relationship. For example, a connectivity relationship might specify additional information such as the specific protocol used (for instance, TCP/IP) and/or particular characteristics of a protocol (for instance, port number). See the *PropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.3].
  - **relatedResourceRef:** Naming the second resource is optional. When it is not named, the relationship constraint is satisfied if the first resource has the defined relationship with any other resource. When it is named, the value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.
  - **type:** Values for relationship type are not defined by the SDD specification.

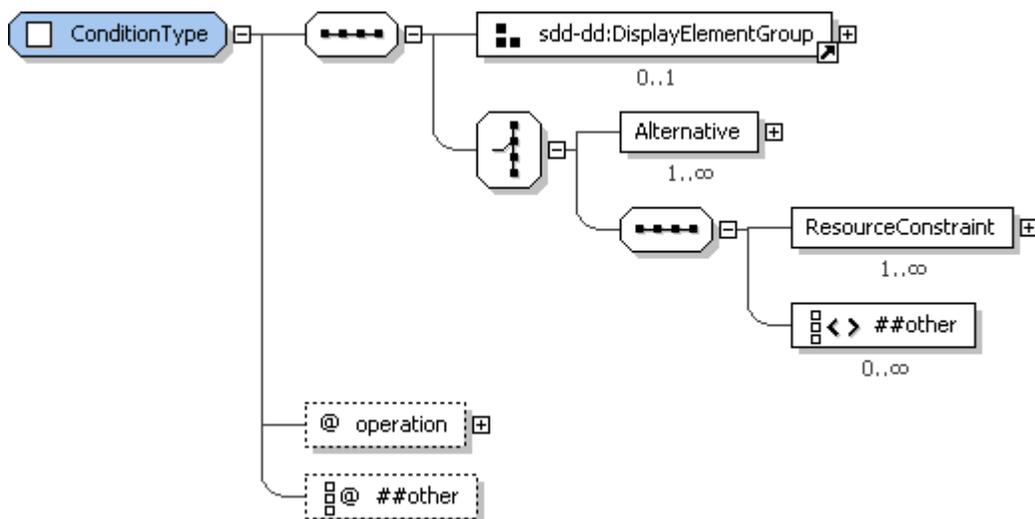
1952 **4.5 Conditions**

1953 Conditions are expressed on characteristics of resources in the deployment environment. Conditions are  
 1954 used to indicate when particular elements of the SDD are applicable, or when they should be ignored.  
 1955 Conditions are not requirements. Failure to satisfy a condition does not indicate a failure; it simply means  
 1956 the conditioned element should be ignored. Conditions are used to:

- 1957
- 1958
- 1959
- 1960
- 1961
- determine if a content element is applicable
  - choose from among values for a variable
  - determine when a feature is applicable
  - determine when a particular result is applicable
  - determine if a particular completion action is necessary.

1962 Because conditions are always based on the characteristics of resources, they are expressed using  
 1963 resource constraints.

1964 **4.5.1 ConditionType**



1965 **Figure 44: ConditionType structure.**

1966

1967 *ConditionType* allows expression of the particular resource characteristics that must be true for the  
 1968 condition to be considered met. These are resource characteristics that may vary from one particular  
 1969 deployment to another.

1970 For example, one deployment using the SDD might use one version of an application server and a  
 1971 different deployment might use a different version. The differences in the version might be great  
 1972 enough to:

- 1973 • select among content elements.  
 1974 For example, one content element has an artifact for a Web application that works in a  
 1975 particular version and a different content element has an artifact for a later version of the  
 1976 same Web application.
- 1977 • select among variable values.  
 1978 For example, the default installation path on one operating system may be different from the  
 1979 default install path on another operating system.
- 1980 • select among completion actions.  
 1981 For example, a reboot may be required when deploying on one operating system but not  
 1982 another.

### 1983 4.5.1.1 ConditionType Property Summary

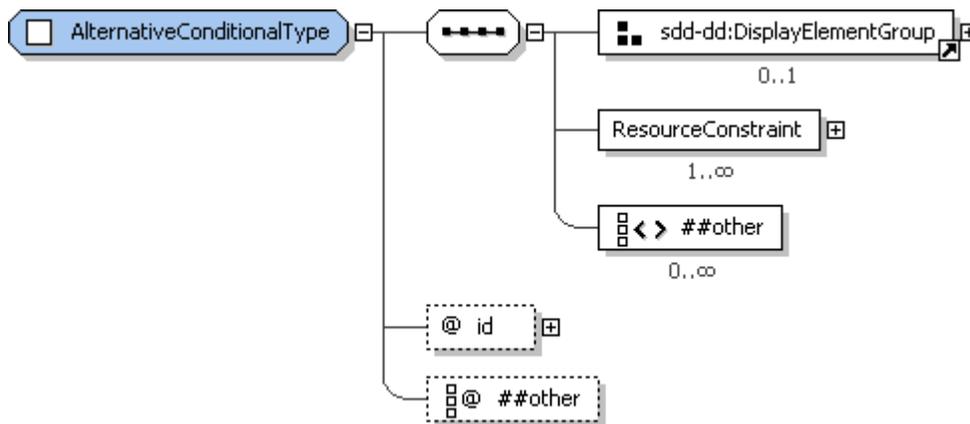
| Name               | Type                              | *    | Description   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|------|---|
| DisplayName        | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Name of the condition.  |
| Description        | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Description of the condition.   |
| ShortDescription   | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Short description of the condition.   |
| Alternative        | AlternativeConditionalType        | 0..* | An alternative set of resource constraints.   |
| ResourceConstraint | ConditionalResourceConstraintType | 0..* | A set of constraints on one resource.   |
|                    | xsd:any                           | 0..* |   |
| operation          | OperationListType                 | 0..1 | The condition applies only when processing the artifact associated with this operation. |
|                    | xsd:anyAttribute                  | 0..* |   |

### 1984 4.5.1.2 ConditionType Property Usage Notes

- 1985 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
 1986 MUST provide a label for the condition.  
 1987 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 1988 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
 1989 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the condition.  
 1990 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
 1991 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 1992 ▪ **Alternative:** When a condition can be satisfied in multiple ways, two or more *Alternative* elements are  
 1993 defined.  
 1994 As a convenience for tooling that produces SDDs, it is also possible to define a single *Alternative*.  
 1995 This is semantically identical to directly defining *ResourceConstraints*.  
 1996 To meet a condition, at least one of the specified *Alternatives* must be satisfied.  
 1997 See the *AlternativeConditionalType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.2].

- 1998   ▪ **ResourceConstraint:** When a condition can be satisfied in only one way, constraints MAY be
- 1999    defined directly under *Condition* or in a single *Alternative* element.
- 2000    Constraints are defined using a sequence of *ResourceConstraints*. Every constraint in the sequence
- 2001    must be met for the condition to be met.
- 2002    See the *ConditionalResourceConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.3].
- 2003   ▪ **operation:** In a singleton atomic content element, a condition MAY be associated with application of
- 2004    one or more artifacts. The association is made by setting the *operation* attribute to the operations
- 2005    associated with those artifacts.
- 2006    *Conditions* defined for *CompositeInstallable* and for atomic content elements defined within a
- 2007    *CompositeInstallable* SHOULD NOT define *operation*. If the *operation* is defined for a
- 2008    *CompositeInstallable Condition*, it MUST be set to the operation defined in the *CompositeInstallable's*
- 2009    *operation* attribute. If *operation* is defined for an atomic content element's *Condition*, it MUST be set
- 2010    to the operation associated with the single artifact defined by the atomic content element.
- 2011    When *operation* is not specified, the condition applies to the processing of all artifacts.
- 2012    See the *OperationListType* section for *operation* enumerations and their meaning [4.3.6].

## 2013 4.5.2 AlternativeConditionalType



2014  
2015 **Figure 45: AlternativeConditionalType structure.**

2016 When a condition can be met in more than one way, alternative sets of conditional resource constraints  
2017 can be defined. *AlternativeConditionalType* provides the type definition for these elements.

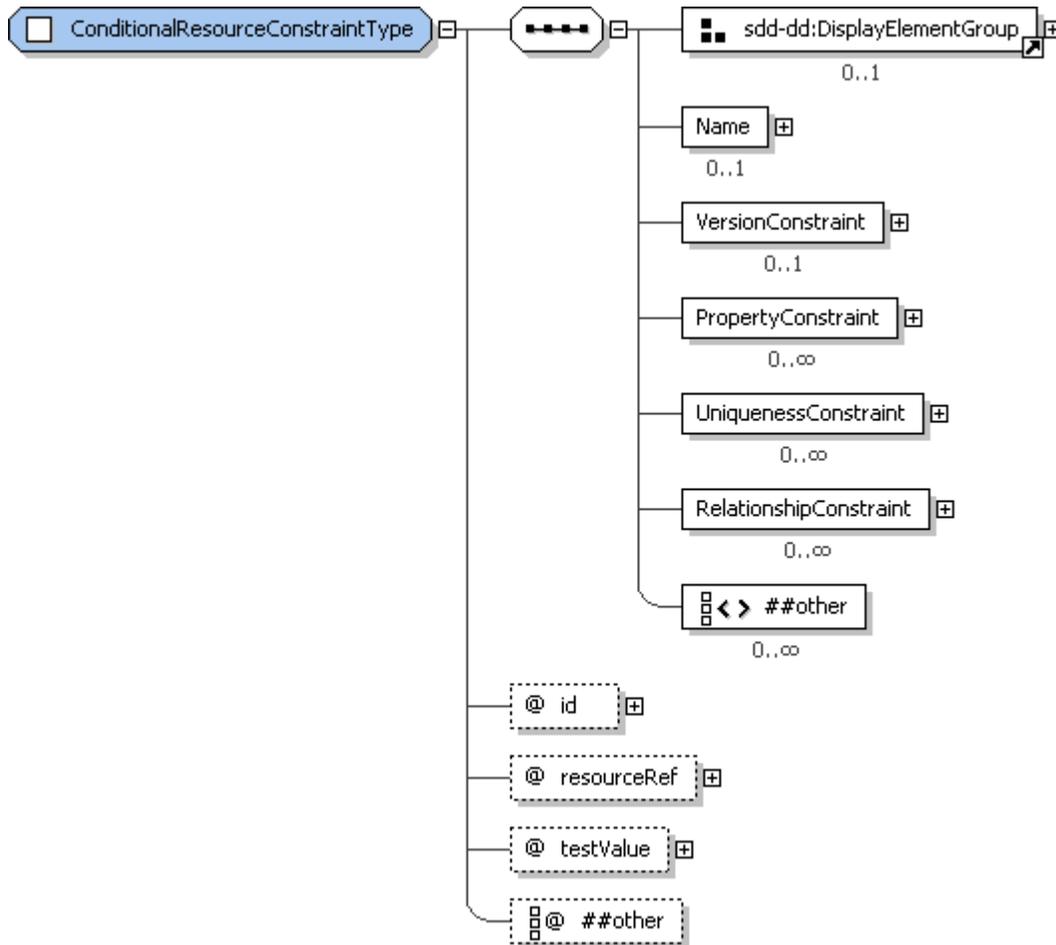
### 2018 4.5.2.1 AlternativeConditionalType Property Summary

| Name               | Type                              | *    | Description   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|------|---|
| DisplayName        | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Name of the alternative.  |
| Description        | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Description for the alternative.  |
| ShortDescription   | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Short description of the alternative.   |
| ResourceConstraint | ConditionalResourceConstraintType | 1..* | A set of constraints on one resource.   |
|                    | xsd:any                           | 0..* |   |
| id                 | xsd:IDREF                         | 1    | Identifier for the alternative that is unique within the deployment descriptor. |
|                    | xsd:anyAttribute                  | 0..* |   |

2019 **4.5.2.2 AlternativeConditionalType Property Usage Notes**

- 2020 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it
- 2021 MUST provide a label for the alternative condition.
- 2022 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2023 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
- 2024 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the alternative condition.
- 2025 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2026 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2027 ▪ **ResourceConstraint:** All constraints defined in the individual *Alternative* MUST be met for the
- 2028 *Alternative* condition to evaluate to true.
- 2029 See the *ConditionalResourceConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.3].
- 2030 ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
- 2031 log and trace messages.

2032 **4.5.3 ConditionalResourceConstraintType**



2033 **Figure 46: ConditionalResourceConstraintType structure.**

2034 *ConditionalResourceConstraintType* provides the type definitions for the *ResourceConstraint* elements

2035 used in conditions. These constraints do not represent requirements for deployment. They identify the

2036 resource characteristics associated with a condition. Name, version, property and the existence or

2037 absence of the resource can be specified with a resource constraint used in a condition.

2038

### 4.5.3.1 ConditionalResourceConstraintType Property Summary

| Name                   | Type                              | *    | Description  |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|------|--|
| DisplayName            | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Name of the resource constraint.   |
| Description            | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Description for the resource constraint.   |
| ShortDescription       | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Short description of the resource constraint.  |
| Name                   | VariableExpressionType            | 0..1 | Name of the resource constraint.   |
| VersionConstraint      | VersionConstraintValueType        | 0..1 | A resource version set.  |
| PropertyConstraint     | ConditionalPropertyConstraintType | 0..* | A resource property name and required value.   |
| UniquenessConstraint   | UniquenessConstraintType          | 0..* | A required mapping of two resources in the topology to unique instances in the deployment environment.                               |
| RelationshipConstraint | RelationshipConstraintType        | 0..* | A required relationship between the resource identified in the resourceRef and another resource in the topology.                     |
|                        | xsd:any                           | 0..* |  |
| id                     | xsd:ID                            | 1    | Identifier for the resource constraint that is unique within the deployment descriptor.  |
| resourceRef            | xsd:IDREF                         | 1    | The resource to which the conditions apply.  |
| testValue              | xsd:boolean                       | 0..1 | The result of evaluating the contained constraints, which will result in the ResourceConstraint being met.<br>**default value="true" |
|                        | xsd:anyAttribute                  | 0..* |  |

### 4.5.3.2 ConditionalResourceConstraintType Property Usage Notes

2041   ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
2042   MUST provide a label for the resource constraint.

2043   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

2044   ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
2045   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the resource constraint.

2046   The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.

2047   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

2048   ▪ **Name:** The name of the resource identified by *resourceRef*. If the resource name is defined in  
2049   topology it SHOULD NOT be defined here. If it is defined in both places, the one defined in the  
2050   condition is used when evaluating the condition.

2051   See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

2052   ▪ **VersionConstraint:** The actual version of the resource MUST be one of the set of versions defined  
2053   here for the version condition to be considered met.

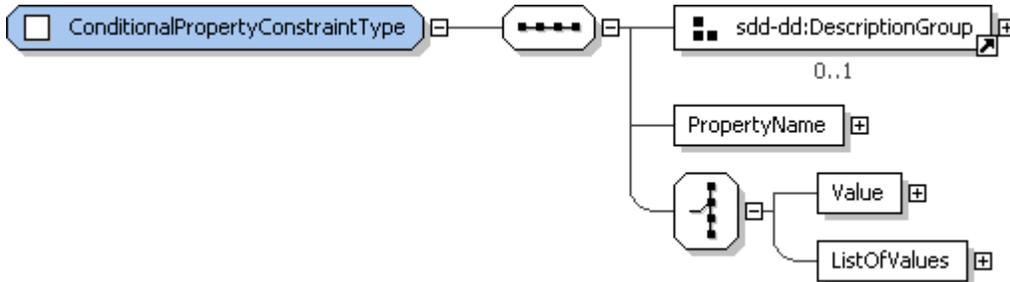
2054   See the *VersionConstraintValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.8].

2055   ▪ **PropertyConstraint:** The actual value of the property MUST match the value defined here for the  
2056   condition to be considered met.

2057   See the *ConditionalPropertyConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.4].

- 2058   ▪ **UniquenessConstraint:** *UniquenessConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to
- 2059    indicate when two resources defined in topology MUST or MUST NOT resolve to the same resource
- 2060    instance during a particular deployment.
- 2061    See the *UniquenessConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.12].
- 2062   ▪ **RelationshipConstraint:** *RelationshipConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to
- 2063    indicate a constraint on a particular relationship between resources.
- 2064    See the *RelationshipConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.13].
- 2065   ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
- 2066    log and trace messages.
- 2067   ▪ **resourceRef:** The version and property constraints defined here all apply to the one resource
- 2068    specification in topology identified by this attribute.
- 2069    The value MUST reference the *id* of that resource element in *Topology*.
- 2070   ▪ **testValue:** When the result of evaluating *Name* and all of the constraints defined in the
- 2071    *ResourceConstraint* matches the value of *testValue*, the *ResourceConstraint* is considered met.
- 2072    When no name, version or property constraints are defined, and *testValue* is “true”, the constraint is
- 2073    met if the resource exists as defined in topology.
- 2074    When no name, version or property constraints are defined, and *testValue* is “false”, the constraint is
- 2075    met if the resource, as defined in topology, does not exist.

2076   **4.5.4 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType**



2077  
2078   **Figure 47: ConditionalPropertyConstraintType structure.**

2079   *ConditionalPropertyConstraintType* provides the type definition for a *PropertyConstraint* included within

2080   *Alternatives* specified in *Condition* elements. The *ConditionalPropertyConstraintType* is very similar to the

2081   *PropertyConstraintType*; the only difference is that the *Value* element defined in the

2082   *ConditionalPropertyConstraintType* is of type `xsd:string` which is less restrictive than the *Value*

2083   element defined in the *PropertyConstraintType* which is of *VariableExpressionType*.

2084   **4.5.4.1 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType Property Summary**

| Name             | Type                  | *    | Description  |
|------------------|-----------------------|------|--|
| Description      | DisplayTextType       | 0..1 | A description of the property constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined. |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType       | 0..1 | A short description of the property constraint.                                    |
| PropertyName     | xsd:QName             | 1    | Name of the constrained property.  |
| Value            | xsd:string            | 0..1 | Required property value.   |
| ListOfValues     | PropertyValueListType | 0..1 | List of required property values.  |

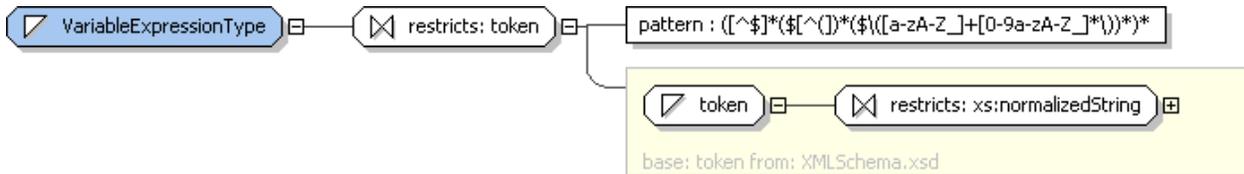
2085 **4.5.4.2 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 2086 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
- 2087 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the *PropertyConstraint* element.
- 2088 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2089 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 2090 ▪ **PropertyName:** The property name can be used to find the property value in the deployment
- 2091 environment. The name may be defined in a profile [5.3].
- 2092 ▪ **Value:** In a condition, the value used in a property constraint is a string rather than a variable
- 2093 expression.
- 2094 ▪ **ListOfValues:** A list of required values can be defined in place of a single required value.
- 2095 See the *PropertyValueListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.6].

2096 **4.6 Variables**

2097 Variables provide a means to associate user inputs, resource property values, fixed strings and values  
2098 derived from these with input arguments for artifacts and with constraints on resources.

2099 **4.6.1 VariableExpressionType**



2100  
2101 **Figure 48: VariableExpressionType structure.**

2102 Variable expressions are used in many places in the SDD. They allow the value of a variable to be used  
2103 as all, or part of, the value of some other SDD element. A variable expression is a string that can include  
2104 a reference to a variable. The string is evaluated by replacing all references to variables with the value of  
2105 the variable. A variable reference is a variable id placed inside parentheses preceded by a dollar sign.

2106 For example, the variable expression “C:\Program Files\\$(InstallDirectory)” resolves to “C:\Program  
2107 Files\Acme Software Product” if the value of the variable with the id “InstallDirectory” has the value  
2108 “Acme Software Product”.

2109 The value of a variable that is replaced into a variable expression can itself have a variable reference.  
2110 This reference is resolved before using the value. This nesting of variable expressions is unlimited. Any  
2111 number of variable references can be used in a variable expression. If a variable expression string does  
2112 not contain a variable reference, it is used as is.

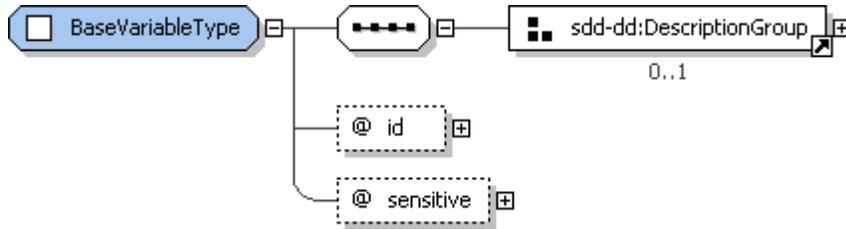
2113 A variable is considered defined if it has a value provided, even if that value is the empty string. A variable  
2114 expression is considered valid if it contains no variable references, or if all contained variable references  
2115 are defined.

2116 Specifically, a *ResourceProperty* variable is undefined when the resource does not participate in the  
2117 particular deployment or when the specified property has no value. A *Parameter* variable is undefined  
2118 when it has no default value and has no value provided by the deployer. A *DerivedVariable* that uses  
2119 *ConditionalExpression* elements is undefined when none of its conditions evaluates to true, or the  
2120 selected condition's value expression is not valid. A *DerivedVariable* that uses an unconditioned  
2121 *Expression* is undefined when its value expression is undefined.

2122 To avoid an undefined *Parameter* variable, default parameter values may be used. To avoid an undefined  
2123 *ResourceProperty* variable, replace references to the *ResourceProperty* variable with references to a  
2124 *DerivedVariable* defined to provide a default value in cases where the *ResourceProperty* is undefined.  
2125 This *DerivedVariable* would define one expression, conditioned on the resource, that refers to the  
2126 *ResourceProperty* variable and another, low priority, catch-all expression that defines the desired  
2127 “default” value. Note that the default value in either of these cases MAY be an empty string, for example,

2128 "" . An empty string acts just like any other defined variable value. When the provided value of a variable is  
 2129 an empty string, the variable reference in a variable expression is replaced by an empty string.

2130 **4.6.2 BaseVariableType**



2131  
 2132 **Figure 49: BaseVariableType structure.**

2133 *BaseVariableType* is the base type of the *DerivedVariable* and *ResourceProperty* elements defined by  
 2134 *VariablesType* [4.6.3]. It provides the *id* attribute, which is used to reference the variable in a variable  
 2135 expression.

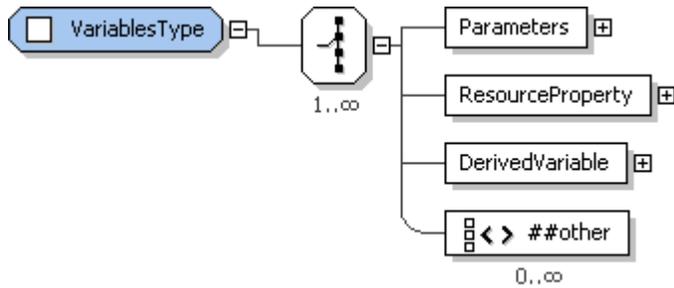
2136 **4.6.2.1 BaseVariableType Property Summary**

| Name             | Type            | *    | Description   |
|------------------|-----------------|------|---|
| Description      | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | Description of the variable.  |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | Short description of the variable.  |
| id               | xsd:ID          | 1    | Identifier used for referencing the variable within the descriptor.                       |
| sensitive        | xsd:boolean     | 0..1 | A "true" value indicates the variable contains sensitive data.<br>**default value="false" |

2137 **4.6.2.2 BaseVariableType Property Usage Notes**

- 2138 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
 2139 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the variable.  
 2140 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
 2141 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 2142 ▪ **id:** Variables may be referenced in deployment descriptor elements of type *VariableExpression* within  
 2143 the scope of the variable. The scope of the variable includes the content element where defined and  
 2144 all nested content elements. *Variables* defined in the top level content element are also visible in  
 2145 *Topology*. The *Variable* is referenced by placing the variable *id* within parentheses preceded by a  
 2146 dollar sign.  
 2147 For example, a variable with *id* value "InstallLocation" is referenced with the string  
 2148 "\$(InstallLocation)".  
 2149 The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
 2150 log and trace messages.
- 2151 ▪ **sensitive:** The *sensitive* attribute provides an indication of whether the data within a variable is likely  
 2152 to be considered sensitive. User name and password are examples of data that may be considered  
 2153 sensitive.  
 2154 For example, *sensitive* data typically would not be displayed in a user interface, written to a log  
 2155 file, stored without protection, or in any way made visible except to authorized users.  
 2156 The default value is "false".

2157 **4.6.3 VariablesType**



2158  
2159 **Figure 50: VariablesType structure.**

2160 There are three types of variables that can be defined in a content element: input parameter variables,  
2161 variables that take the value of a resource property, and variables whose value is derived from a variable  
2162 expression.

2163 A variable is in scope for a particular deployment when the content element that defines the variable is in  
2164 scope for that deployment.

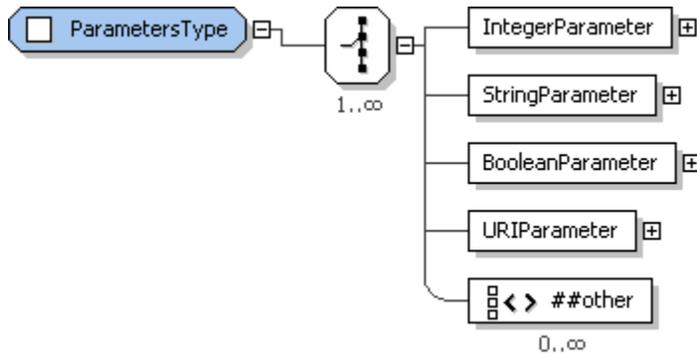
2165 **4.6.3.1 VariablesType Property Summary**

| Name             | Type                 | *    | Description  |
|------------------|----------------------|------|--|
| Parameters       | ParametersType       | 0..* | A list of variables whose values can be supplied as input to the deployment process.   |
| ResourceProperty | ResourcePropertyType | 0..* | A variable whose value is set from the value of a resource property.   |
| DerivedVariable  | DerivedVariableType  | 0..* | A set of expressions with optional associated conditions. The DerivedVariable's value is determined by evaluating the conditions and then setting the variable value to the result of the top priority expression from the set of expressions whose conditions evaluate to true. |
|                  | xsd:any              | 0..* |  |

2166 **4.6.3.2 VariablesType Property Usage Notes**

- 2167 ▪ **Parameters:** See the *ParametersType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.4].
- 2168 ▪ **ResourceProperty:** See the *ResourcePropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details  
2169 [4.6.12].
- 2170 ▪ **DerivedVariable:** See the *DerivedVariableType* section for structure and additional usage details  
2171 [4.6.13].

2172 **4.6.4 ParametersType**



2173  
2174 **Figure 51: ParametersType structure.**

2175 Parameters are variables whose value is expected to be received as input to the deployment process.  
2176 The SDD author can specify multiple specific types of parameters, including validation rules for the values  
2177 of the parameters.

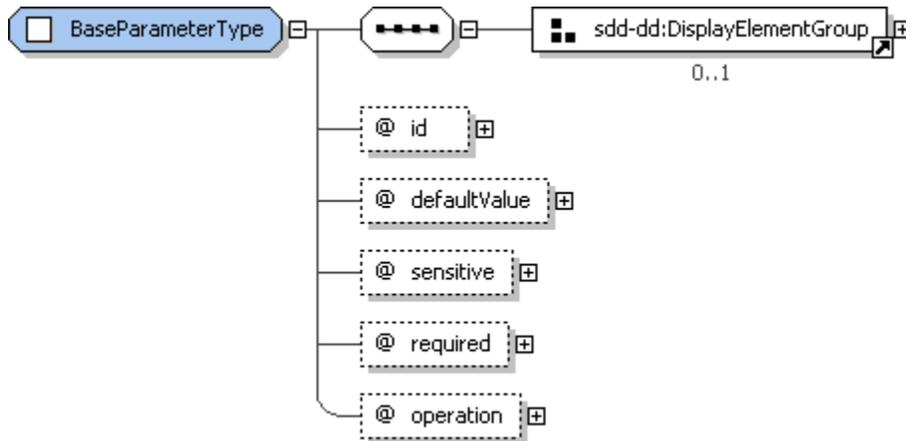
2178 **4.6.4.1 ParametersType Property Summary**

| Name             | Type                 | *    | Description                                      |
|------------------|----------------------|------|--|
| IntegerParameter | IntegerParameterType | 0..* | An integer input parameter.                      |
| StringParameter  | StringParameterType  | 0..* | A string input parameter.                        |
| BooleanParameter | BooleanParameterType | 0..* | A boolean input parameter.                       |
| URIPParameter    | URIPParameterType    | 0..* | A Universal Resource Identifier input parameter. |
|                  | xsd:any              | 0..* |  |

2179 **4.6.4.2 ParametersType Property Usage Notes**

- 2180 ▪ **IntegerParameter:** See the *IntegerParameterType* section for structure and additional usage details  
2181 [4.6.6].
- 2182 ▪ **StringParameter:** See the *StringParameterType* section for structure and additional usage details  
2183 [4.6.8].
- 2184 ▪ **BooleanParameter:** See the *BooleanParameterType* section for structure and additional usage  
2185 details [4.6.10].
- 2186 ▪ **URIPParameter:** See the *URIPParameterType* section for structure and additional usage details  
2187 [4.6.11].

2188 **4.6.5 BaseParameterType**



2189  
2190 **Figure 52: BaseParameterType structure.**

2191 *BaseParameterType* provides a default value, along with other attributes used by all parameter types. It  
2192 also provides the *id* attribute, which is used to reference the parameter in variable expressions.

2193 **4.6.5.1 BaseParameterType Property Summary**

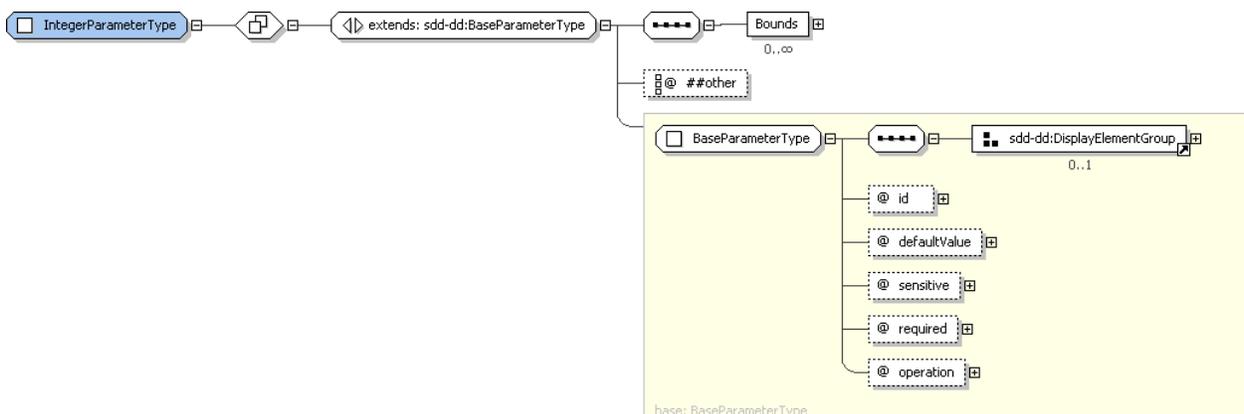
| Name             | Type                   | *    | Description   |
|------------------|------------------------|------|---|
| DisplayName      | DisplayTextType        | 0..1 | Name of the parameter.  |
| Description      | DisplayTextType        | 0..1 | Description of the parameter.   |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType        | 0..1 | Short description of the parameter.   |
| id               | xsd:ID                 | 1    | Identifier used for referencing the variable within the descriptor.                                 |
| defaultValue     | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | Default value for the parameter.  |
| sensitive        | xsd:boolean            | 0..1 | A "true" value indicates the variable contains sensitive data.<br>**default value="false"           |
| required         | xsd:boolean            | 0..1 | A "true" value indicates that a value for the parameter must be provided.<br>**default value="true" |
| operation        | OperationListType      | 0..1 | The parameter is used when the specified operation(s) is (are) performed.                           |

2194 **4.6.5.2 BaseParameterType Property Usage Notes**

- 2195 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
2196 MUST provide a label for the parameter.  
2197 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2198 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
2199 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the parameter.  
2200 These elements may be used to assist the deployer in understanding the purpose and expected  
2201 values for the parameters.  
2202 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
2203 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

- 2204   ▪ **id:** Parameters may be referenced in *DeploymentDescriptor* elements of type *VariableExpression*
- 2205    within the scope of the parameter variable. The scope of the variable includes the content element
- 2206    where the variable is defined and all nested content elements. Variables defined in the top level
- 2207    content element are also visible in *Topology*. The *Variable* is referenced by placing the variable *id*
- 2208    within parentheses preceded by a dollar sign.
- 2209        For example, a variable with *id* value “InstallLocation” is referenced with the string
- 2210        “\$(InstallLocation)”.
- 2211    The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
- 2212    log and trace messages.
- 2213    ▪ **defaultValue:** The *defaultValue* is used if no other value is provided as input to the deployment
- 2214    process.
- 2215    The value is interpreted based on the type of the defining parameter.
- 2216        For example, the *defaultValue* for a *BooleanParameter* must be either “true” or “false”; the
- 2217        *defaultValue* for a *StringParameter* must be a string; etc.
- 2218    See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2219    ▪ **sensitive:** The *sensitive* attribute provides an indication of whether the data within a variable is likely
- 2220    to be considered sensitive. User name and password are examples of data that may be considered
- 2221    sensitive.
- 2222        For example, *sensitive* data typically would not be displayed in a user interface, written to a log
- 2223        file, stored without protection, or in any way made visible except to authorized users.
- 2224    ▪ **required:** A “true” value for *required* indicates that a value for the parameter must be provided when
- 2225    the parameter is in scope for a particular deployment.
- 2226    In cases where the parameter should be ignored when the value expression is not valid for a
- 2227    particular deployment, set *required* to “false”.
- 2228    A “false” value for the *required* attribute has no effect when *defaultValue* is set.
- 2229    ▪ **operation:** This attribute enables unique parameters to be defined per operation. Note that the use of
- 2230    a parameter for a particular operation is determined by a reference to the parameter in a variable
- 2231    expression or artifact argument used when performing that operation. The operation(s) associated
- 2232    with a parameter’s use can be determined by examining its use in the SDD. The *operation* attribute
- 2233    provides a quick way to know which operation(s) will use the parameter without having to examine
- 2234    the use of the parameter.
- 2235    All parameters defined within a *CompositeInstallable* are associated with the single operation
- 2236    supported by the *CompositeInstallable*. The *operation* attribute SHOULD NOT be set in this situation.
- 2237    See the *OperationListType* section for *operation* enumerations and their meaning [4.3.6].

2238    **4.6.6 IntegerParameterType**



2239    **Figure 53: IntegerParameterType structure.**

2240

2241 *IntegerParameterType* defines upper and lower bounds that can be used to validate the input received for  
 2242 that parameter.

2243 **4.6.6.1 IntegerParameterType Property Summary**

| Name   | Type                        | *    | Description  |
|--------|-----------------------------|------|--|
|        | [extends] BaseParameterType |      | See the BaseParameterType section for additional properties [4.6.5]. |
| Bounds | BoundaryType                | 0..* | Specifies the boundaries for the value of the parameter.             |
|        | xsd:anyAttribute            | 0..* |  |

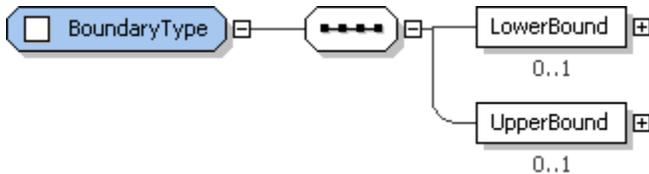
2244 **4.6.6.2 IntegerParameterType Property Usage Notes**

2245 See the *BaseParameterType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.5].

- 2246 ▪ **Bounds:** If there are restrictions on the range of values that are valid for a parameter, those  
 2247 restrictions MUST be specified in *Bounds*.

2248 See the *BoundaryType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.7].

2249 **4.6.7 BoundaryType**



2250  
 2251 **Figure 54: BoundaryType structure.**

2252 *BoundaryType* defines upper and lower bounds that can be used to validate the input received for that  
 2253 parameter.

2254 **4.6.7.1 BoundaryType Property Summary**

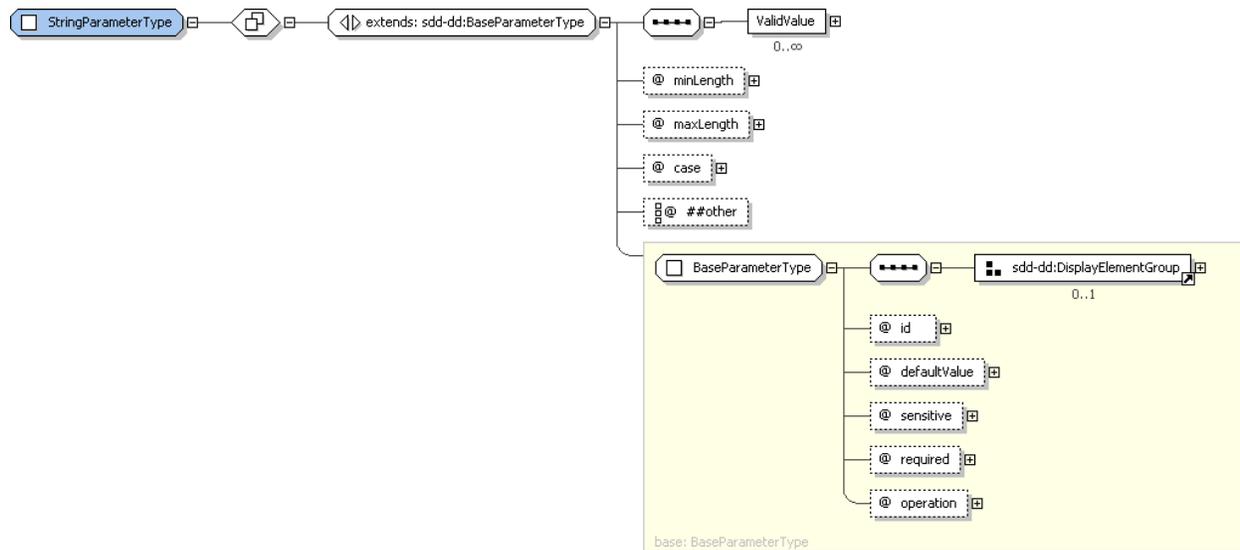
| Name       | Type                   | *    | Description                            |
|------------|------------------------|------|--|
| LowerBound | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | Lowest valid value for the parameter.  |
| UpperBound | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | Highest valid value for the parameter. |

2255 **4.6.7.2 BoundaryType Property Usage Notes**

- 2256 ▪ **LowerBound:** This variable expression MUST resolve to an integer.  
 2257 If no *LowerBound* is specified, no integer value is too low.  
 2258 A *LowerBound* of “0” restricts the integer parameter to positive integer values.  
 2259 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2260 ▪ **UpperBound:** This variable expression MUST resolve to an integer.  
 2261 If no *UpperBound* is specified, no integer value is too high.  
 2262 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

2263

## 4.6.8 StringParameterType



2264

2265 **Figure 55: StringParameterType structure.**

2266 *StringParameterType* supports definition of minimum and maximum lengths that can be used to validate  
 2267 the input received for the string parameter. It also supports definition of a list of valid input values.

### 2268 4.6.8.1 StringParameterType Property Summary

| Name       | Type                        | *    | Description  |
|------------|-----------------------------|------|--|
|            | [extends] BaseParameterType |      | See the BaseParameterType section for additional properties [4.6.5].           |
| ValidValue | xsd:string                  | 0..* | A string representing one valid value for the parameter.                       |
| minLength  | xsd:positiveInteger         | 0..1 | Minimum length of the parameter value.   |
| maxLength  | xsd:positiveInteger         | 0..1 | Maximum length of the parameter value.   |
| case       | StringCaseType              | 0..1 | The case of the string—"upper", "lower" or "mixed".<br>**default value="mixed" |
|            | xsd:anyAttribute            | 0..* |  |

### 2269 4.6.8.2 StringParameterType Property Usage Notes

2270 See the *BaseParameterType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.5].

- 2271 ▪ **ValidValue:** Any number of valid values for the parameter can be listed using *ValidValue* elements.  
 2272 When both *defaultValue* and one or more *ValidValues* are specified, *defaultValue* MUST match one  
 2273 of the *ValidValues*.  
 2274 *ValidValues* should be in the correct case as identified in the *case* attribute.
- 2275 ▪ **minLength:** When no minimum length is specified, no string is too short, including an empty string.
- 2276 ▪ **maxLength:** When no maximum length is specified, no string is too long.
- 2277 ▪ **case:** Used when the case of the string is restricted. Defaults to *mixed* if not defined.
- 2278 See the *StringCaseType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.6.9].

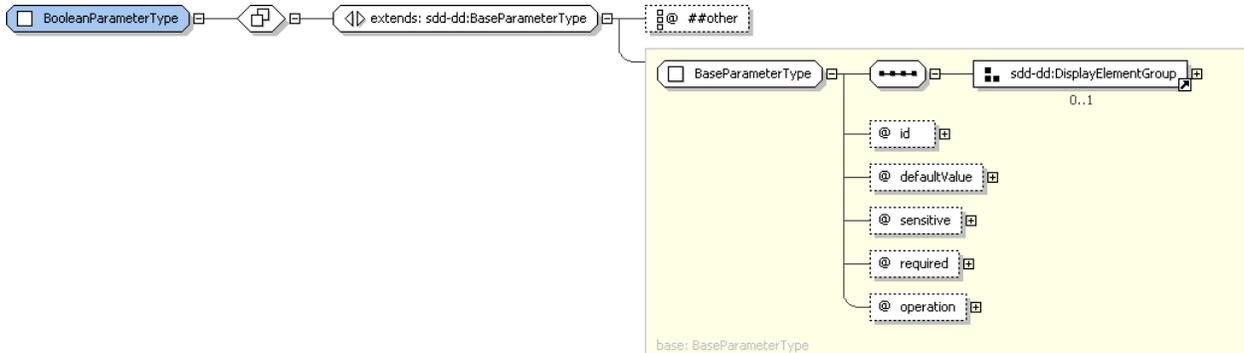
2279 **4.6.9 StringCaseType**

2280 *StringCaseType* defines the enumeration values for specifying case restrictions on a string parameter.

2281 **4.6.9.1 StringCaseType Property Usage Notes**

- 2282 ▪ **lower**: The string MUST be lower case.
- 2283 ▪ **upper**: The string MUST be upper case.
- 2284 ▪ **mixed**: The string SHOULD be mixed case.

2285 **4.6.10 BooleanParameterType**



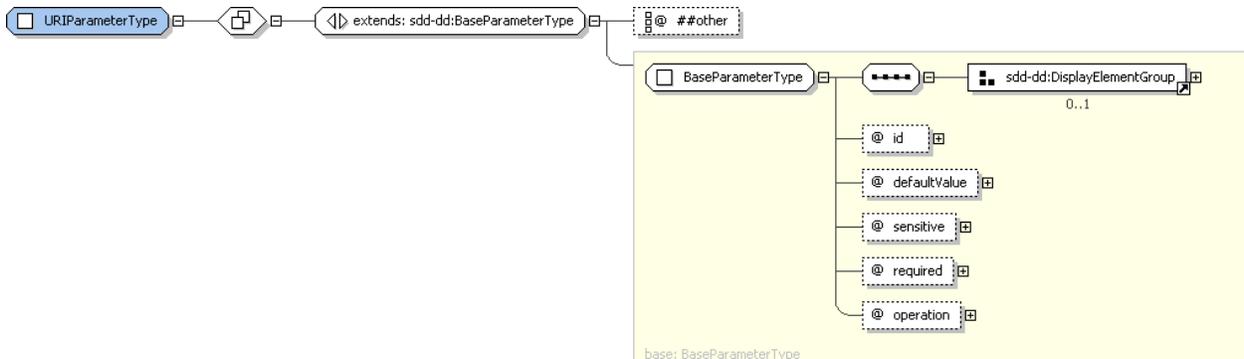
2286 **Figure 56: BooleanParameterType structure.**

2288 *BooleanParameterType* extends *BaseParameterType* without adding any additional attributes or elements. When the *defaultValue* attribute is defined for a boolean parameter, its value MUST be either “true” or “false”. See the *BaseParameterType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.5].

2292 **4.6.10.1 BooleanParameterType Property Summary**

| Name | Type                        | *    | Description  |
|------|-----------------------------|------|--|
|      | [extends] BaseParameterType |      | See the BaseParameterType section for additional properties [4.6.5]. |
|      | xsd:anyAttribute            | 0..* |  |

2293 **4.6.11 URIParameterType**



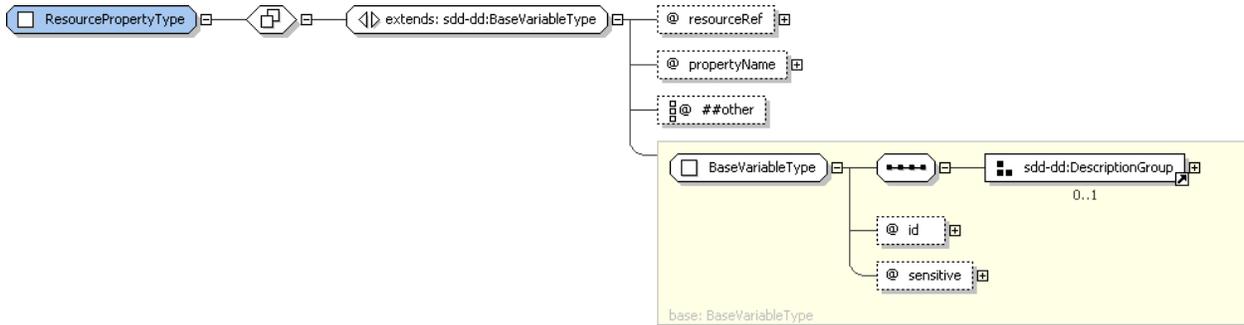
2294 **Figure 57: URIParameterType structure.**

2296 When the default value attribute is specified for a URI parameter, its value MUST be a valid Uniform Resource Identifier. See the *BaseParameterType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.5].

2299 **4.6.11.1 URIParameType Property Summary**

| Name | Type                        | *    | Description  |
|------|-----------------------------|------|--|
|      | [extends] BaseParameterType |      | See the BaseParameterType section for additional properties [4.6.5]. |
|      | xsd:anyAttribute            | 0..* |  |

2300 **4.6.12 ResourcePropertyType**



2301  
2302 **Figure 58: ResourcePropertyType structure.**

2303 *ResourcePropertyType* provides the type definition for the *ResourceProperty* element of *VariablesType*  
2304 [4.6.3]. *ResourceProperty* is a variable whose value is set from the property of a specific instance of a  
2305 resource during a particular solution deployment. All content elements can define *ResourceProperty*  
2306 elements.

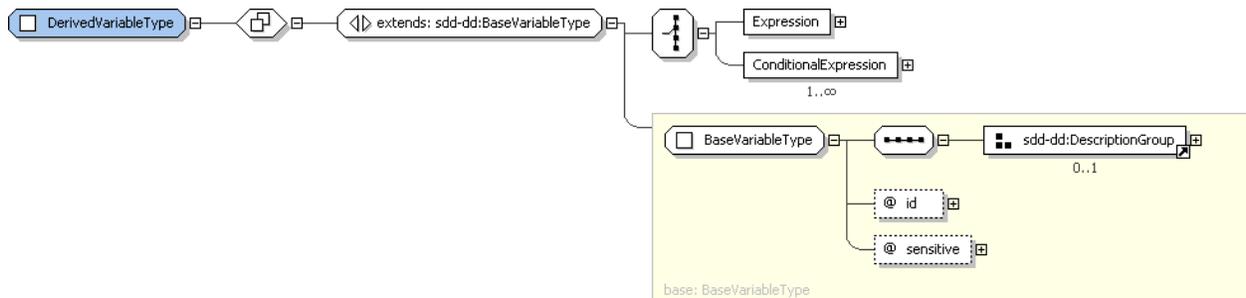
2307 **4.6.12.1 ResourcePropertyType Property Summary**

| Name         | Type                       | *    | Description   |
|--------------|----------------------------|------|---|
|              | [extends] BaseVariableType |      | See the BaseVariableType section for additional properties [4.6.2]. |
| resourceRef  | xsd:IDREF                  | 1    | The resource in Topology that owns the property.                    |
| propertyName | xsd:QName                  | 1    | Name of the property whose value provides the variable's values.    |
|              | xsd:anyAttribute           | 0..* |   |

2308 **4.6.12.2 ResourcePropertyType Property Usage Notes**

- 2309 See the *BaseVariableType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.2].
- 2310 ▪ **resourceRef**: The *resourceRef* attribute MUST identify the resource in *Topology* that owns the
  - 2311 *property* and will provide the value for *ResourceProperty*.
  - 2312 ▪ **propertyName**: The *propertyName* attribute identifies the name of the resource property whose value
  - 2313 is to be used as the value of *ResourceProperty*.

2314 **4.6.13 DerivedVariableType**



2315  
2316 **Figure 59: DerivedVariableType structure.**

2317 A *DerivedVariable* defines a series of expressions with optional conditions. The value of the variable is  
 2318 determined by evaluating the boolean conditions and then setting the variable to the result of the top  
 2319 priority expression from the set of expressions whose conditions evaluate to true. This restriction does not  
 2320 apply to variables of the same name in different descriptors. The SDD author **MUST** create  
 2321 *DerivedVariables* in a way that makes the selection of the expression unambiguous.

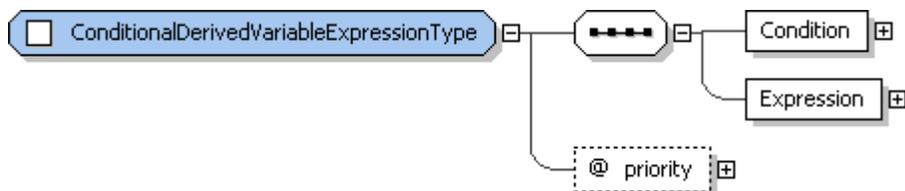
2322 **4.6.13.1 DerivedVariableType Property Summary**

| Name                  | Type                                     | *    | Description   |
|-----------------------|--|------|---|
|                       | [extends] BaseVariableType               |      | See the BaseVariableType section for additional properties [4.6.2]. |
| Expression            | VariableExpressionType                   | 1    | An expression whose results become the value of the variable.       |
| ConditionalExpression | ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType | 1..* | An expression and an associated condition.                          |

2323 **4.6.13.2 DerivedVariableType Property Usage Notes**

- 2324 See the *BaseVariableType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.2].
- 2325 ▪ **Expression:** When the *DerivedVariable* is used to define one variable whose value is not conditional,  
 2326 the SDD author can include one variable expression defined in one *Expression* element.  
 2327 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
  - 2328 ▪ **ConditionalExpression:** When the variable will take one of a number of possible values depending  
 2329 on the characteristics of the resources that participate in the particular deployment, then one  
 2330 *ConditionalExpression* element is defined for each value-condition pair.  
 2331 See the *ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details  
 2332 [4.6.14].

2333 **4.6.14 ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType**



2334  
2335 **Figure 60: ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType structure.**

2336 *ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType* is the type of the *ConditionalExpression* elements in derived  
 2337 variables. These elements associate a condition with a variable expression.

2338

#### 4.6.14.1 ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType Property Summary

| Name       | Type                   | *    | Description  |
|------------|------------------------|------|--|
| Condition  | ConditionType          | 1    | A set of resource characteristics that are evaluated to determine if the associated expression is a candidate for determining the value of the derived variable. |
| Expression | VariableExpressionType | 1    | Evaluation of this expression produces a candidate value for the derived variable.   |
| priority   | xsd:positiveInteger    | 0..1 | A priority used as a tie-breaker when multiple expressions are available to determine the value of the variable.<br>**default value="1"                          |

2339

#### 4.6.14.2 ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType Property Usage Notes

2340  
2341  
2342

- **Condition:** Selection of conditioned expressions is based on the characteristics of one or more resources that participate in a particular solution deployment. These characteristics are defined in the *Condition* element.

2343

See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

2344  
2345

- **Expression:** The *Expression* element contains the expressions that evaluate to a potential value of the *DerivedVariable*. Only one expression will be selected for use in a particular solution deployment.

2346

See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

2347  
2348  
2349

- **priority:** When multiple conditions evaluate to true for a particular deployment, the expression chosen is determined by the *priority* value. A higher priority is indicated by a lower value. "1" is the highest priority.

2350

### 4.7 Requirements

2351  
2352  
2353  
2354  
2355  
2356  
2357  
2358  
2359  
2360  
2361

*Requirements* are defined by content elements. A *Requirement* consists of resource constraints that the SDD author states MUST be met prior to successful deployment or use of the software described by the SDD package. Each *Requirement* definition lists one or more deployment lifecycle operations to which the *Requirement* applies. When the *Requirement* is specified in an atomic content element, the operation associates the *Requirement* with artifacts within the atomic content element. (See the *OperationType* section for the mapping between operations and artifacts [4.3.7]. Note that the *use* operation indicates that the *Requirement* is associated with running of the software after deployment and not with content element artifacts.) When the *Requirement* is specified in a *CompositeUnit* or *CompositeInstallable*, the *operation* value MUST either be *use* or be the same top level *operation* as defined in the *CompositeInstallable* element. When the *Requirement* is specified for a *ReferencedPackage*, the *operation* associates the *Requirement* with a top level *operation* within the referenced SDD.

2362  
2363

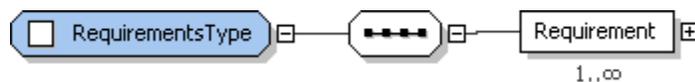
All *Requirements* specified for content elements that are in scope for a particular deployment MUST be met.

2364  
2365

When a *Requirement* can be satisfied in more than one way, *Alternatives* can be defined within a *Requirement*. A *Requirement* is considered met when any one of the *Alternatives* is satisfied.

2366

#### 4.7.1 RequirementsType



2367

2368

**Figure 61: RequirementsType structure.**

2369  
2370

*RequirementsType* provides the type definition for *Requirements* in *InstallableUnit* and *LocalizationUnit* elements. It defines a list of *Requirement* elements.

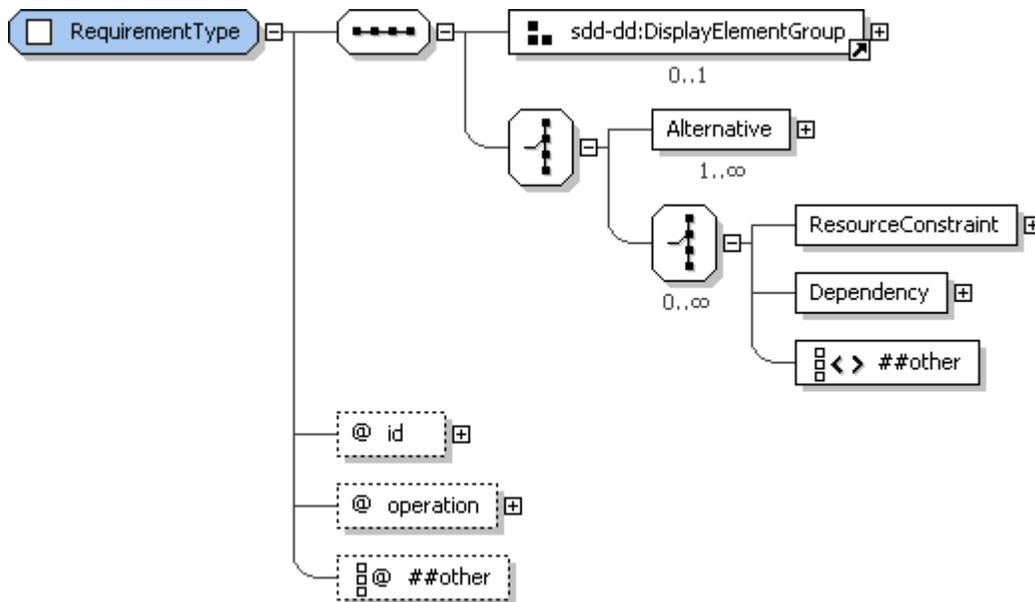
2371 **4.7.1.1 RequirementsType Property Summary**

| Name        | Type            | *    | Description  |
|-------------|-----------------|------|--|
| Requirement | RequirementType | 1..* | A requirement that must be met prior to processing the defining content element's artifacts. |

2372 **4.7.1.2 RequirementsType Property Usage Notes**

- 2373 ▪ **Requirement:** The *Requirements* element contains a sequence of *Requirement* elements. The  
2374 *Requirement* elements define requirements that **MUST** be met prior to successful processing of the  
2375 content element's artifacts.
- 2376 See the *RequirementType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.2].

2377 **4.7.2 RequirementType**



2378  
2379 **Figure 62: RequirementType structure.**

2380 A *Requirement* either directly defines a single set of resource constraints that **MUST** be met or defines  
2381 one or more alternative sets of resource constraints, only one of which **MUST** be met.

2382 When multiple *Requirement* elements are declared for the same operation, all **MUST** be met prior to  
2383 processing the associated artifact.

2384 The association is made between a requirement and an artifact via the *operation* attribute.

2385 **4.7.2.1 RequirementType Property Summary**

| Name               | Type                              | *    | Description                                      |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|------|--|
| DisplayName        | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Name of the requirement.                         |
| Description        | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Description of the requirement.                  |
| ShortDescription   | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Short description of the requirement.            |
| Alternative        | AlternativeRequirementType        | 0..* | An alternative that can satisfy the requirement. |
| ResourceConstraint | RequirementResourceConstraintType | 0..* | A set of constraints on one resource.            |

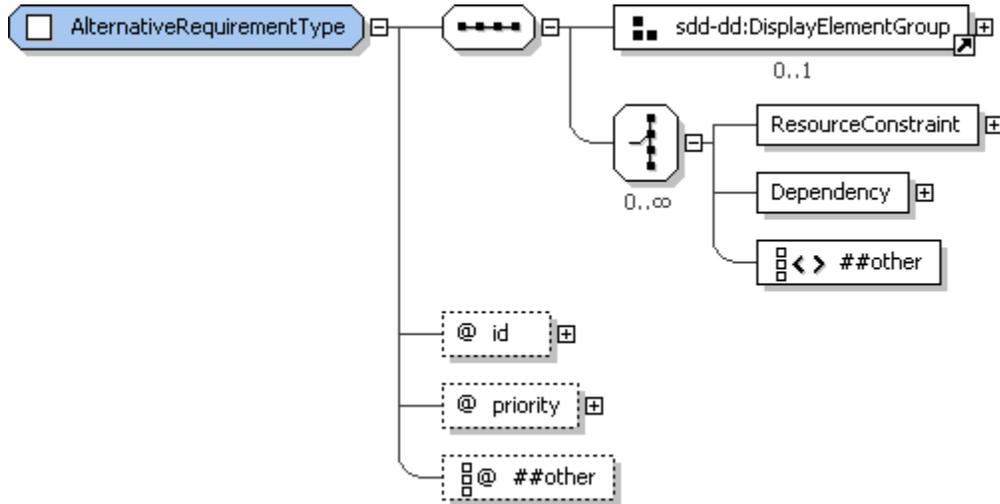
|            |                        |      |   |
|------------|------------------------|------|---|
| Dependency | InternalDependencyType | 0..* | A dependency on another content element.                        |
|            | xsd:any                | 0..* |   |
| id         | xsd:ID                 | 1    | Identifier for requirement scoped to the deployment descriptor. |
| operation  | OperationListType      | 1    | Requirement must be met before this operation is performed.     |
|            | xsd:anyAttribute       | 0..* |   |

#### 2386 4.7.2.2 RequirementType Property Usage Notes

- 2387   ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
2388   MUST provide a label for the requirement.
- 2389   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2390   ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
2391   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the requirement.
- 2392   The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2393   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2394   ▪ **Alternative:** Alternative elements are used when a requirement can be satisfied in multiple ways.  
2395   As a convenience for tooling that produces SDDs, it is also possible to define a single *Alternative*.  
2396   This is semantically identical to directly defining *ResourceConstraints* under *Requirements*.
- 2397   To satisfy a requirement, at least one of the specified alternatives MUST be satisfied.
- 2398   See the *AlternativeRequirementType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.3].
- 2399   ▪ **ResourceConstraint:** When a requirement can be satisfied in only one way, constraints MAY be  
2400   defined directly under *Requirement* or in a single *Alternative* element.
- 2401   Constraints are defined using a sequence of *ResourceConstraints*. Every constraint in the sequence  
2402   MUST be met for the requirement to be met.
- 2403   See the *RequirementResourceConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details  
2404   [4.7.5].
- 2405   ▪ **Dependency:** When one content element must be processed before another for any reason, a *pre-*  
2406   *req* type *Dependency* MUST be defined. Reasons for a pre-requisite dependency include the use of  
2407   an output variable from one artifact as an argument to another; the deployment of a resource before it  
2408   is configured; and the configuration of a resource before deployment of another resource that  
2409   depends on it.
- 2410   See the *InternalDependencyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.6].
- 2411   ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
2412   log and trace messages.
- 2413   ▪ **operation:** A *Requirement* is associated with application of one or more operations by setting its  
2414   *operation* attribute value to one of the enumerated values defined in *OperationListType* [4.3.6].
- 2415   If the *Requirement* is not a pre-requisite for application of an operation, but rather is required before  
2416   the resulting resources are considered usable, then the value SHOULD be set to *use*. (Note that a  
2417   completion action may also be required before a resulting resource is considered usable. See the  
2418   *CompletionType* section [4.3.14].)
- 2419   The value of *operation* for a *Requirement* defined in an atomic content element MUST be set either to  
2420   *use* or to an *operation* that is associated with an artifact element defined in the content element's  
2421   *Artifacts*. The *operation* value(s) associate the *Requirement* with one or more artifact(s).

2422 When the *Requirement* is specified in a *CompositeUnit* or *CompositeInstallable*, the *operation* value  
 2423 MUST be set either to *use* or be the same top level *operation* as defined in the *CompositeInstallable*  
 2424 element.  
 2425 There is no default value for *operation*. The SDD author must define it explicitly.  
 2426 See the *OperationType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.3.7].

2427 **4.7.3 AlternativeRequirementType**



2428  
 2429 **Figure 63: AlternativeRequirementType structure.**

2430 *AlternativeRequirementType* provides the type definition for *Alternative* elements used within  
 2431 requirements to define alternative sets of resource constraints that will satisfy the requirement.

2432 **4.7.3.1 AlternativeRequirementType Property Summary**

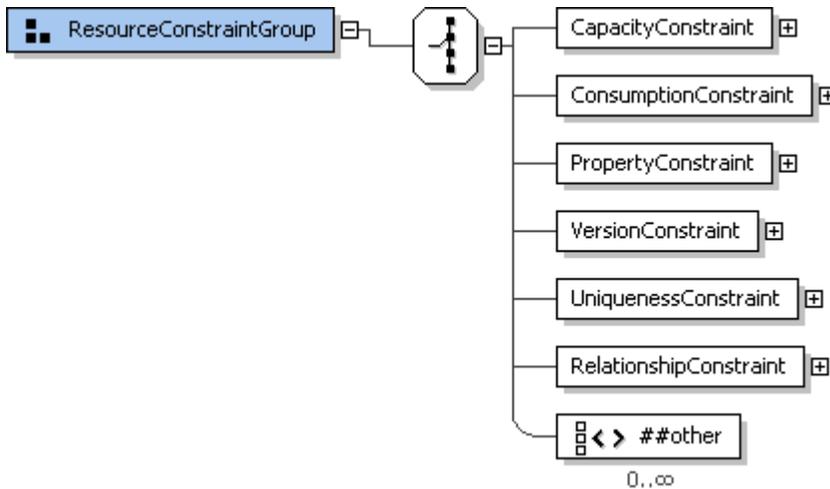
| Name               | Type                              | *    | Description   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|------|---|
| DisplayName        | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Name of the alternative.  |
| Description        | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Description of the alternative.   |
| ShortDescription   | DisplayTextType                   | 0..1 | Short description of the alternative.   |
| ResourceConstraint | RequirementResourceConstraintType | 1..* | A set of requirements on one resource.  |
| Dependency         | InternalDependencyType            | 0..* | A dependency on another content element.  |
|                    | xsd:any                           | 0..* |   |
| id                 | xsd:ID                            | 1    | Identifier for the alternative scoped to the deployment descriptor.   |
| priority           | xsd:positiveInteger               | 0..1 | Assists in determining alternative selected when multiple alternatives evaluate to true.<br>**default value="1" |
|                    | xsd:anyAttribute                  | 0..* |   |

2433 **4.7.3.2 AlternativeRequirementType Property Usage Notes**

- 2434 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
 2435 MUST provide a label for the alternative requirement.

- 2436 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2437 ■ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
- 2438 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the alternative requirement.
- 2439 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2440 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2441 ■ **ResourceConstraint:** Every *ResourceConstraint* defined in a single *Alternative* MUST be met for the
- 2442 alternative requirement to be considered satisfied.
- 2443 See the *RequirementResourceConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details
- 2444 [4.7.5].
- 2445 ■ **Dependency:** When one content element must be processed before another for any reason, a *pre-*
- 2446 *req* type *Dependency* MUST be defined. Reasons for a pre-requisite dependency include the use of
- 2447 an output variable from one artifact as an argument to another; the deployment of a resource before it
- 2448 is configured; and the configuration of a resource before deployment of another resource that
- 2449 depends on it.
- 2450 See the *InternalDependencyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.6].
- 2451 ■ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
- 2452 log and trace messages.
- 2453 ■ **priority:** If there are multiple satisfied alternatives during a particular solution deployment, one of the
- 2454 alternatives must be selected. The *priority* attribute communicates the SDD author's prioritization of
- 2455 the alternatives. A lower number represents a higher priority with "1" representing the highest priority.
- 2456 Other inputs may also be used to select an alternative. The criteria for making this selection are
- 2457 outside of the scope of the SDD.

2458 **4.7.4 ResourceConstraintGroup**



2459 **Figure 64: ResourceConstraintGroup structure.**

2460 The elements of *ResourceConstraintGroup* are used when defining content element requirements on

2461 resources. The *ResourceConstraint* element is used to group one or more constraints on a single

2462 resource.

2464 **4.7.4.1 ResourceConstraintGroup Property Summary**

| Name                  | Type                      | *    | Description   |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|------|---|
| CapacityConstraint    | CapacityConstraintType    | 0..1 | A bound on a quantifiable property of a resource.             |
| ConsumptionConstraint | ConsumptionConstraintType | 0..1 | A required quantity of a property of a resource in any state. |

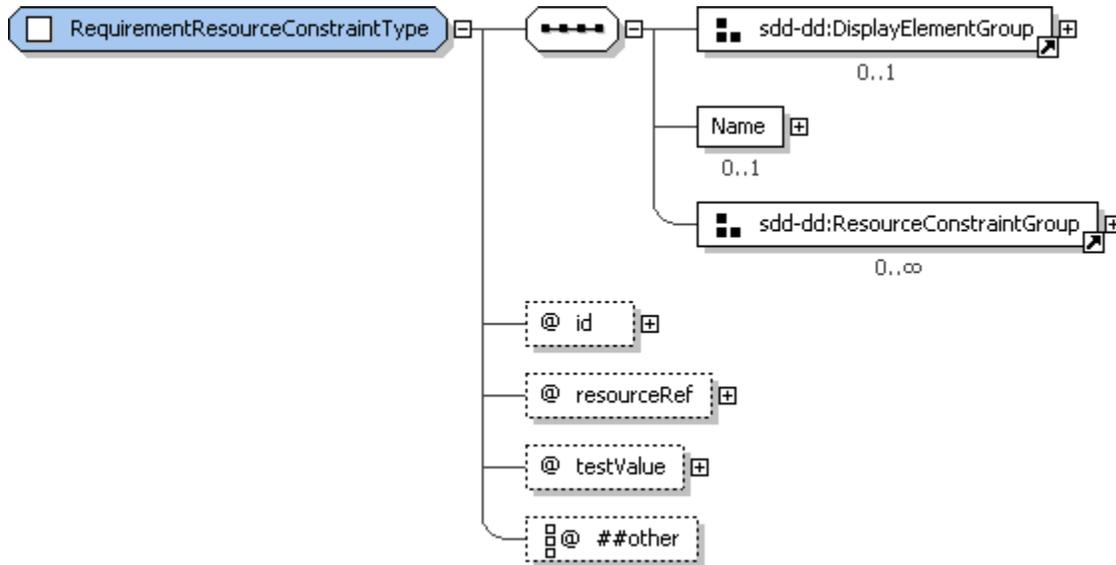
|                        |                            |      |  |
|------------------------|----------------------------|------|--|
| PropertyConstraint     | PropertyConstraintType     | 0..1 | A required value or set of values of a property.   |
| VersionConstraint      | VersionConstraintType      | 0..1 | A required value or set of values of a version property.   |
| UniquenessConstraint   | UniquenessConstraintType   | 0..1 | A required mapping of two resources in the topology to unique instances in the deployment environment.           |
| RelationshipConstraint | RelationshipConstraintType | 0..1 | A required relationship between the resource identified in the resourceRef and another resource in the topology. |
|                        | xsd:any                    | 0..* |  |

#### 2465 4.7.4.2 ResourceConstraintGroup Property Usage Notes

- 2466   ▪ **CapacityConstraint:** *CapacityConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to express  
2467 constraints on the available capacity of a particular property of a particular resource.
- 2468    A *CapacityConstraint* tests a numeric value representing a bound on a quantifiable property of a  
2469 resource, such as processor speed. The test may be for a lower (minimum) or upper (maximum)  
2470 bound. This constraint differs from a *ConsumptionConstraint* in that it is comparative, not cumulative.
- 2471    When multiple *CapacityConstraint* elements are defined by content elements participating in a  
2472 particular solution deployment apply to the same property of the same resource, the most restrictive  
2473 constraint applies.
- 2474    See the *CapacityConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.1].
- 2475   ▪ **ConsumptionConstraint:** *ConsumptionConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to  
2476 express constraints on the quantity of a particular property of a specific resource that is available for  
2477 consumption.
- 2478    A *ConsumptionConstraint* defines a required quantity of a consumable resource property. The  
2479 *ConsumptionConstraint* is cumulative rather than comparative.
- 2480        An example of a consumable resource property is the disk space property of a file system  
2481 resource.
- 2482    When multiple *ConsumptionConstraint* elements are defined for the same resource by content  
2483 elements participating in a particular solution deployment, the sum of all the expressed consumption  
2484 constraints must be met by the resource.
- 2485    See the *ConsumptionConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.3].
- 2486   ▪ **PropertyConstraint:** *PropertyConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to indicate that  
2487 specific resource properties must have a specific value or set of values.
- 2488    See the *PropertyConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.5].
- 2489   ▪ **VersionConstraint:** *VersionConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to express a  
2490 constraint on the version of a specific resource.
- 2491    A *VersionConstraint* defines a required resource version or a range of versions. It MAY include a  
2492 certified version or range of versions representing a more restrictive set of versions whose use carries  
2493 a higher degree of confidence.
- 2494    Version formats and comparison rules vary greatly. The SDD does not provide information on how to  
2495 interpret version strings.
- 2496    See the *VersionConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.7].
- 2497   ▪ **UniquenessConstraint:** *UniquenessConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to  
2498 indicate when two resources defined in topology MUST or MUST NOT resolve to the same resource  
2499 instance during a particular deployment.
- 2500    See the *UniquenessConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.12].
- 2501   ▪ **RelationshipConstraint:** *RelationshipConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to  
2502 indicate a constraint on a particular relationship between resources.

2503 See the *RelationshipConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.13].

2504 **4.7.5 RequirementResourceConstraintType**



2505 **Figure 65: RequirementResourceConstraintType structure.**

2506 *ResourceConstraintType* provides the Type section for the *ResourceConstraint* element in content  
 2507 element *Requirements*. A *ResourceConstraint* is a set of zero or more constraints on one resource.  
 2508

2509 **4.7.5.1 RequirementResourceConstraintType Property Summary**

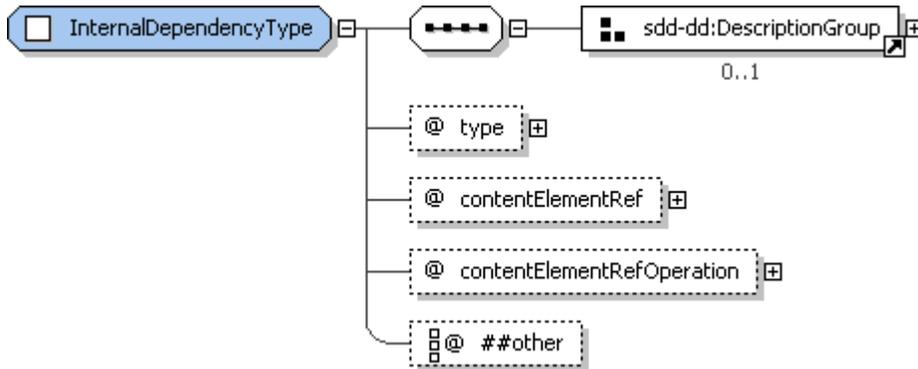
| Name                   | Type                       | *    | Description  |
|------------------------|----------------------------|------|--|
| DisplayName            | DisplayTextType            | 0..1 | Name for the resource constraint.  |
| Description            | DisplayTextType            | 0..1 | Description of the resource constraint.  |
| ShortDescription       | DisplayTextType            | 0..1 | Short description of the resource constraint.  |
| Name                   | VariableExpressionType     | 0..1 | The name of the resource.  |
| CapacityConstraint     | CapacityConstraintType     | 0..1 | A capacity constraint that applies to the resource identified in resourceRef.                                    |
| ConsumptionConstraint  | ConsumptionConstraintType  | 0..1 | A consumption constraint that applies to the resource identified in resourceRef.                                 |
| PropertyConstraint     | PropertyConstraintType     | 0..1 | A property constraint that applies to the resource identified in resourceRef.                                    |
| VersionConstraint      | VersionConstraintType      | 0..1 | A version constraint that applies to the resource identified in resourceRef.                                     |
| UniquenessConstraint   | UniquenessConstraintType   | 0..1 | A required mapping of two resources in the topology to unique instances in the deployment environment.           |
| RelationshipConstraint | RelationshipConstraintType | 0..1 | A required relationship between the resource identified in the resourceRef and another resource in the topology. |
|                        | xsd:any                    | 0..* |  |
| id                     | xsd:ID                     | 1    | Identifier for the ResourceConstraint scoped to the  |

|             |                  |      |  |
|-------------|------------------|------|--|
|             |                  |      | deployment descriptor.   |
| resourceRef | xsd:IDREF        | 1    | Reference to a resource specification in topology.   |
| testValue   | xsd:boolean      | 0..1 | Indicates whether the ResourceConstraint must evaluate to true or to false.<br>**default value="true". |
|             | xsd:anyAttribute | 0..* |  |

2510 **4.7.5.2 RequirementResourceConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 2511   ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
2512   MUST provide a label for the resource constraint.
- 2513   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2514   ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
2515   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the resource constraint.
- 2516   The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2517   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2518   ▪ **Name:** This name is used to identify the resource in the deployment environment. If the resource  
2519   identified by *resourceRef* does not have the name defined here, then the constraint is not met.
- 2520   See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2521   ▪ **CapacityConstraint, ConsumptionConstraint, PropertyConstraint, VersionConstraint,**  
2522   **UniquenessConstraint, RelationshipConstraint:** See the *ResourceConstraintGroup* section for  
2523   structure and additional usage of the individual constraints [4.7.4].
- 2524   ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
2525   log and trace messages.
- 2526   ▪ **resourceRef:** This is the resource to which the constraints apply.  
2527   This reference MUST refer to the *id* of a resource in *Topology*.
- 2528   ▪ **testValue:** When the result of evaluating *Name* and all of the constraints defined in the  
2529   *ResourceConstraint* matches the value of *testValue*, the *ResourceConstraint* is considered met.
- 2530   When no *Name* or constraints are defined, and *testValue* is "true", the constraint is met if the resource  
2531   exists as defined in topology.
- 2532   When no *Name* or constraints are defined, and *testValue* is "false", the constraint is met if the  
2533   resource, as defined in topology, does not exist.

2534 **4.7.6 InternalDependencyType**



2535  
2536 **Figure 66: InternalDependencyType structure.**

2537 *InternalDependencyType* provides the type definition for *Dependency* elements defined in all types of  
 2538 content elements. *Dependency* elements allow the expression of dependence on the application of a  
 2539 particular operation to a content element defined in the deployment descriptor before application of a  
 2540 particular operation on the defining content element. The dependency is associated with an operation on  
 2541 the defining content element by the operation attribute in the *Requirement* defining the *Dependency*  
 2542 element. The dependency is associated with an operation on the depended on content element by the  
 2543 *contentRefOperation* attribute in the *Dependency*. There are three types of dependencies: pre-requisites,  
 2544 co-requisites and ex-requisites.

2545 **4.7.6.1 InternalDependencyType Property Summary**

| Name                       | Type              | *    | Description   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|------|---|
| Description                | DisplayTextType   | 0..1 | A human-understandable description of the dependency.   |
| ShortDescription           | DisplayTextType   | 0..1 | A short human-understandable description of the dependency.   |
| type                       | DependencyType    | 0..1 | Type can be "pre-req", "co-req", or "ex-req".<br>**default value="pre-req"                          |
| contentElementRef          | xsd:IDREF         | 1    | A reference to the content element which is depended on.  |
| contentElementRefOperation | OperationListType | 0..1 | The dependency is on application of this operation to the content element identified in contentRef. |
|                            | xsd:anyAttribute  | 0..* |   |

2546 **4.7.6.2 InternalDependencyType Property Usage Notes**

- 2547 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
 2548 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the dependency.  
 2549 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
 2550 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 2551 ▪ **type:** See the *DependencyType* section for an explanation of the semantics of each of the possible  
 2552 dependency types [4.7.7].
- 2553 ▪ **contentElementRef:** The *contentElementRef* value is the *id* of the content element that is depended  
 2554 on.  
 2555 The value MUST reference the *id* of a content element.
- 2556 ▪ **contentElementRefOperation:** When the depended-on content element is an atomic content  
 2557 element, the operation defined here effectively identifies the artifact that must be processed for a pre-  
 2558 requisite or co-requisite or not processed for an ex-requisite.  
 2559 When the depended-on content element is a *CompositeUnit*, the operation defined in  
 2560 *contentElementRefOperation* MUST be the top level operation defined by the containing  
 2561 *CompositeInstallable*.  
 2562 See the *OperationListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.6].

2563 **4.7.7 DependencyType**

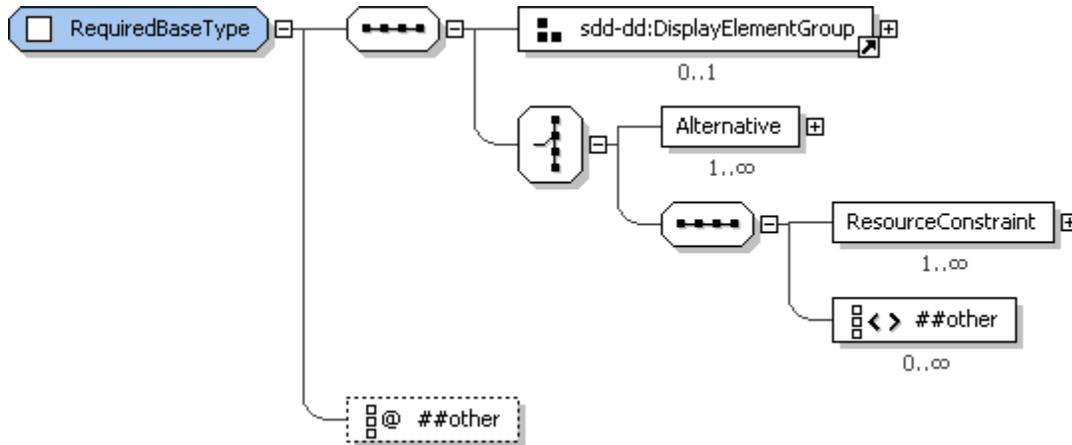
2564 The *DependencyType* enumeration provides the value for the *type* attribute in *Dependency* elements.

2565 **4.7.7.1 DependencyType Property Usage Notes**

- 2566 ▪ **pre-req:** A *pre-req* dependency is satisfied if the other content element is in scope for the  
 2567 deployment. The *pre-req* indicates that the other content element MUST be processed before the  
 2568 content element that defines the *pre-req*.

- 2569 The dependency is not met if the other content element is not in scope.
- 2570 ▪ **co-req**: A *co-req* dependency is satisfied if the other content element is in scope for the deployment.
- 2571 There is no dependence on order of processing.
- 2572 The dependency is not met if the other content element is not in scope.
- 2573 ▪ **ex-req**: An *ex-req* dependency indicates that the other content element **MUST NOT** be in scope.
- 2574 The dependency is not met if the other content element is in scope.

2575 **4.7.8 RequiredBaseType**



2576  
2577 **Figure 67: RequiredBaseType structure.**

2578 *RequiredBaseType* provides the type definition for the *RequiredBase* element of *InstallableUnit* and  
 2579 *LocalizationUnit* elements and the *LocalizationBase* element of *LocalizationUnits*. These elements  
 2580 declare the identity characteristics of one or more resources that will be modified or localized by applying  
 2581 of the content element’s artifacts. Definition of a *RequiredBase* element represents a requirement that a  
 2582 resource matching the declared characteristic exists. Definition of a *LocalizationBase* element represents  
 2583 a condition on the existence of a resource that matches the declared characteristics.

2584 **4.7.8.1 RequiredBaseType Property Summary**

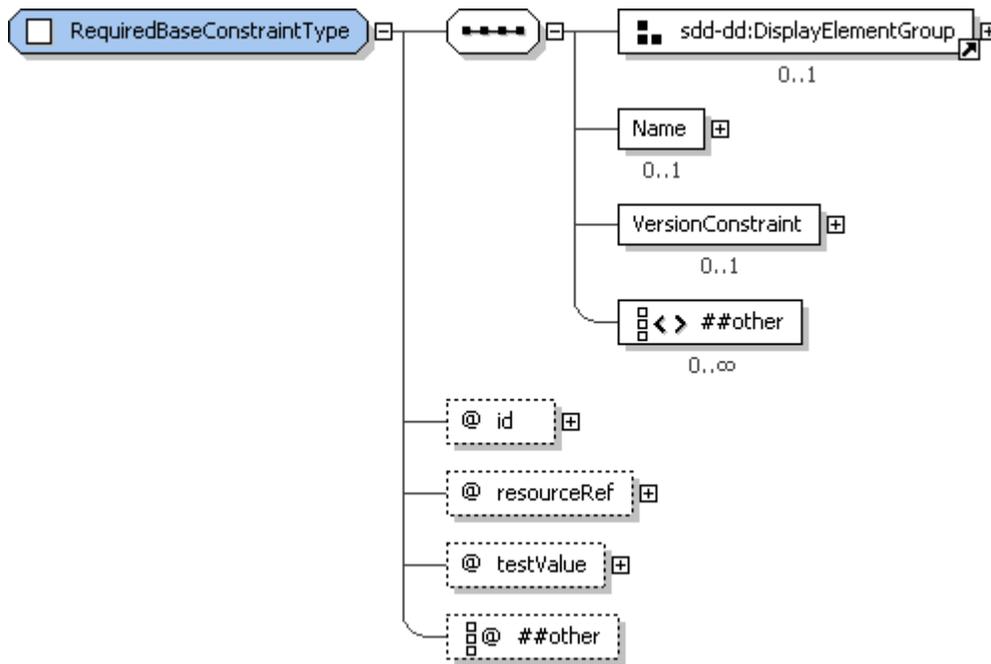
| Name               | Type                                  | *    | Description   |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|------|---|
| DisplayName        | DisplayTextType                       | 0..1 | Display name for the requirement on a resource to serve as the base of an update or localization. |
| Description        | DisplayTextType                       | 0..1 | Description of the requirement. Required if ShortDescription is defined.                          |
| ShortDescription   | DisplayTextType                       | 0..1 | Short description of the requirement.   |
| Alternative        | AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType | 0..* | Alternative set of constraints on a required base resource.                                       |
| ResourceConstraint | RequiredBaseConstraintType            | 1..* | Constraints on the required base resource.  |
|                    | xsd:any                               | 0..* |   |
|                    | xsd:anyAttribute                      | 0..* |   |

2585 **4.7.8.2 RequiredBaseType Property Usage Notes**

- 2586 ▪ **DisplayName**: This element **MAY** be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it
- 2587 **MUST** provide a label for the required base element.

- 2588 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2589 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
- 2590 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the required base for this content element.
- 2591 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2592 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2593 ▪ **Alternative:** When more than one resource can be used as the update or localization base, two or
- 2594 more *Alternative* elements are defined to describe the choices. As a convenience for tooling that
- 2595 produces SDDs, a single *Alternative* can be defined in place of a *ResourceConstraint*.
- 2596 See the *AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details
- 2597 [4.7.10].
- 2598 ▪ **ResourceConstraint:** *ResourceConstraints* defined here identify one or more particular resources
- 2599 that can serve as the update or localization base. If *ResourceConstraints* are defined for multiple
- 2600 resources, they are all updated or localized by application of the content element.
- 2601 See the *RequiredBaseConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.9].

2602 **4.7.9 RequiredBaseConstraintType**



2603 **Figure 68: RequiredBaseConstraintType structure.**

2604 *RequiredBaseConstraintType* provides the type definition for the *ResourceConstraint* elements used in

2605 *RequiredBase* and *LocalizationBase* elements. A required base definition differs from a requirement

2606 definition in the limited nature of the constraints that can be specified. The purpose of constraints within a

2607 required base is to identify resource instances that can be correctly updated or localized by the content

2608 element. Only constraints related to the basic identity characteristics of the resource are allowed.

2609

2610 **4.7.9.1 RequiredBaseConstraintType Property Summary**

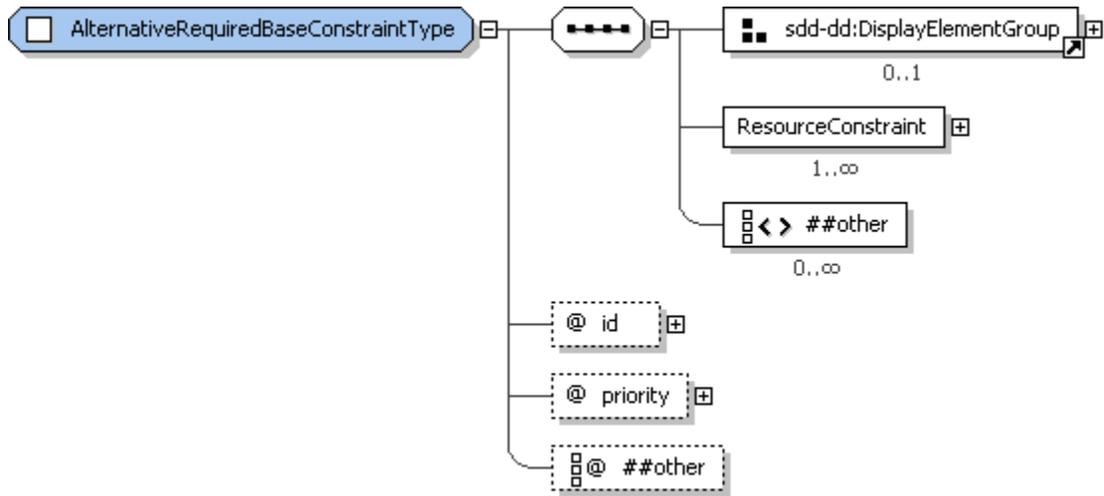
| Name             | Type            | *    | Description                          |
|------------------|-----------------|------|--------------------------------------|
| DisplayName      | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | Name of the constraint.              |
| Description      | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | Description of the constraint.       |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | Short description of the constraint. |

|                   |                        |      |  |
|-------------------|------------------------|------|--|
| Name              | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | Name of the required base resource as understood in the deployment environment.      |
| VersionConstraint | VersionConstraintType  | 0..1 | Allowed versions for the required base resource.                                     |
|                   | xsd:any                | 0..* |  |
| id                | xsd:ID                 | 1    | Constraint identifier scoped to the deployment descriptor.                           |
| resourceRef       | xsd:IDREF              | 1    | Reference to the resource representing the required base for an update operation.    |
| testValue         | xsd:boolean            | 0..1 | Defines the desired result of the required base constraint<br>**default value="true" |
|                   | xsd:anyAttribute       | 0..* |  |

#### 2611 4.7.9.2 RequiredBaseConstraintType Property Usage Notes

- 2612   ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
2613   MUST provide a label for the constraint.
- 2614   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2615   ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
2616   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the constraint on the required base.  
2617   The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
2618   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2619   ▪ **Name:** The *Name* element provides the name by which the resource is known in the deployment  
2620   environment. The value of *Name* is compared to resource names found in the deployment  
2621   environment as part of constraint evaluation.  
2622   If the resource name is declared in the referenced resource definition, it SHOULD NOT be declared  
2623   here. If the resource name is changed by application of the update, the original name SHOULD be  
2624   declared here and the updated name SHOULD be declared in *ResultingResource*. The name  
2625   declared here is always the one that represents the required value for the required base.  
2626   See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2627   ▪ **VersionConstraint:** The *VersionConstraint* element defines the set of versions that can serve as a  
2628   base for the update.  
2629   See the *VersionConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.7].
- 2630   ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
2631   log and trace messages.
- 2632   ▪ **resourceRef:** The *resourceRef* attribute value MUST reference the *id* of the resource element in  
2633   *Topology* to which this constraint refers.
- 2634   ▪ **testValue:** The required base constraint is met when the boolean result of comparing the declared  
2635   name and/or version to the actual name and/or version is equal to the boolean value specified in  
2636   *testValue*.  
2637   Because the purpose of a required base constraint is to positively identify one or more resources that  
2638   can serve as the base for an update or localization, there MUST always be one *ResourceConstraint*  
2639   that has *testValue* set to "true".  
2640   Additional *ResourceConstraints* can be defined with *testValue* set to "false". These constraints  
2641   identify characteristics of the same required base resource that must not be true for that resource to  
2642   serve as the base.

2643 **4.7.10 AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType**



2644  
2645 **Figure 69: AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType structure.**

2646 *AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType* provides the type definition for the *Alternative* elements used in  
2647 *RequiredBase* and *LocalizationBase* elements.

2648 **4.7.10.1 AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType Property Summary**

| Name               | Type                       | *    | Description   |
|--------------------|----------------------------|------|---|
| DisplayName        | DisplayTextType            | 0..1 | Name of the constraint.   |
| Description        | DisplayTextType            | 0..1 | Description of the constraint.  |
| ShortDescription   | DisplayTextType            | 0..1 | Short description of the constraint.  |
| ResourceConstraint | RequiredBaseConstraintType | 1..* | A set of requirements on one resource.  |
|                    | xsd:any                    | 0..* |   |
| id                 | xsd:ID                     | 1    | Constraint identifier scoped to the deployment descriptor.  |
| priority           | xsd:positiveInteger        | 0..1 | Assists in determining alternative selected when multiple alternatives evaluate to true.<br>**default value="1" |
|                    | xsd:anyAttribute           | 0..* |   |

2649 **4.7.10.2 AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 2650
- 2651 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
2652 MUST provide a label for the alternative.  
2653 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
  - 2653 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
2654 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the alternative.  
2655 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
2656 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
  - 2657 ▪ **ResourceConstraint:** *ResourceConstraints* defined here identify one or more particular resources  
2658 that can serve as the update or localization base. If *ResourceConstraints* are defined for multiple  
2659 resources, they are all updated or localized by application of the content element.

- 2660 See the *RequiredBaseConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.9].
- 2661 ▪ **id**: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
- 2662 log and trace messages.
- 2663 ▪ **priority**: If there are multiple satisfied alternatives during a particular solution deployment, one of the
- 2664 alternatives must be selected. The *priority* attribute communicates the SDD author's prioritization of
- 2665 the alternatives. A lower number represents a higher priority with "1" representing the highest priority.
- 2666 Other inputs may also be used to select an alternative. The criteria for making this selection are
- 2667 outside of the scope of the SDD.

## 2668 4.8 Resulting and Changed Resources

2669 Deployment of an SDD package creates or modifies software resources. These resources are included in

2670 the *Topology* definition and described in more detail in *ResultingResource* and *ResultingChange*

2671 elements.

2672 The SDD author can choose to model resulting and modified resources at a very granular level, at a very

2673 coarse level; at any level in between, or not at all. An example of modeling resulting resources at a

2674 granular level would be modeling every file created by the deployment as a resulting resource. An

2675 example of modeling resulting resources at a very coarse level would be modeling the software product

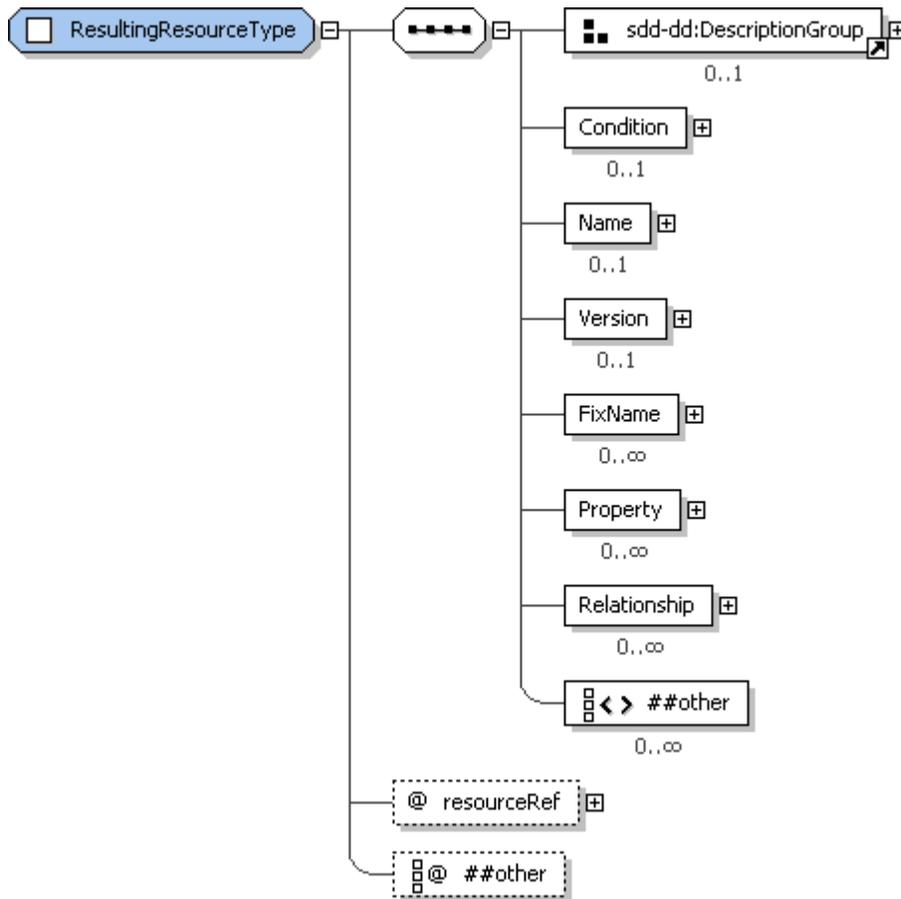
2676 created by deployment as a single resulting resource. The choice depends on the needs of the solution

2677 deployment. If a resource is not modeled in the SDD, no requirements can be expressed on it, no

2678 conditions can be based on it and no variables can be set from values of its properties. It cannot play any

2679 of the roles described for resources in the *ResourceType* section of this document [4.2.2].

### 2680 4.8.1 ResultingResourceType



2681  
2682 **Figure 70: ResultingResourceType structure.**

2683 *InstallableUnit* and *LocalizationUnit* content elements can include zero or more *ResultingResource*  
 2684 elements that describe the key resources installed or updated when the content element's artifacts are  
 2685 processed. The type definition for these elements is provided by *ResultingResourceType*.  
 2686 *ResultingResource* elements refer to resources in topology and define characteristics of those resources  
 2687 that will become true when the artifact is applied. The deployment descriptor author MAY omit the  
 2688 *ResultingResource* element from the content element and the definition of the resource from *Topology*  
 2689 when no knowledge of their existence is required for deployment of the solution or for aggregation of the  
 2690 solution. Characteristics that exist in *ResultingResource* and elsewhere, such as *Topology* or  
 2691 *ResultingChange*, MUST NOT conflict.

2692 For example, if *Topology* specifies a property that indicates that a file must be writable, it would be  
 2693 incorrect for *ResultingResource* to specify that the resulting file resource is read-only.

2694 Example uses of the *ResultingResource* element are to:

- 2695 • determine whether potentially resulting resources will actually be installed or updated;
- 2696 • identify the resource associated with a content element that may be subsequently uninstalled  
 2697 using the uninstall information in this SDD;
- 2698 • discover the components of a logical solution resource previously installed using this SDD;
- 2699 • check whether or not a content element has already been installed.

2700 **4.8.1.1 ResultingResourceType Property Summary**

| Name             | Type                   | *    | Description  |
|------------------|------------------------|------|--|
| Description      | DisplayTextType        | 0..1 | Description of the effect of the content element on the resulting resource.                              |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType        | 0..1 | Short description of the effect of the content element on the resulting resource.                        |
| Condition        | ConditionType          | 0..1 | A condition that determines if the resulting resource definition is relevant to a particular deployment. |
| Name             | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | Name of the resulting resource as known in the deployment environment.                                   |
| Version          | VersionType            | 0..1 | Version of the resulting resource.   |
| FixName          | xsd:string             | 0..* | Name of a resulting fix.   |
| Property         | ResultingPropertyType  | 0..* | A resulting property setting of the resulting resource.  |
| Relationship     | RelationshipType       | 0..* | A relationship that will exist after creating or updating the resource.                                  |
|                  | xsd:any                | 0..* |  |
| resourceRef      | xsd:IDREF              | 1    | Reference to a resource in topology.   |
|                  | xsd:anyAttribute       | 0..* |  |

2701 **4.8.1.2 ResultingResourceType Property Usage Notes**

- 2702 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
 2703 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the effect of the content element on the  
 2704 resulting resource.

2705 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.

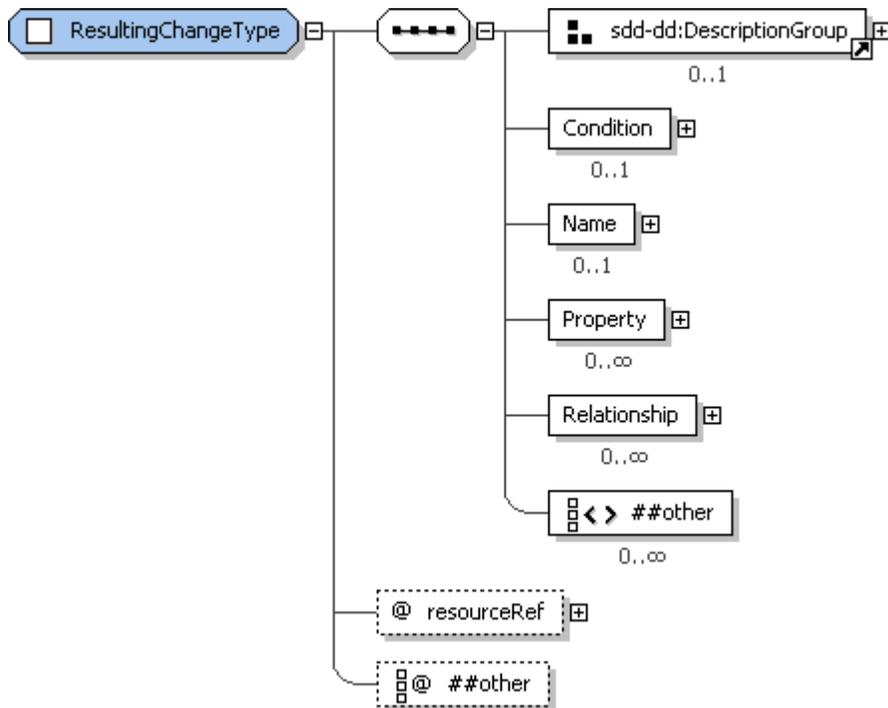
2706 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].

- 2707 ▪ **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the resulting resource will be created by the content element  
 2708 only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.

2709 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

- 2710   ▪ **Name:** The name of the resulting resource SHOULD be defined in the *ResultingResource* element  
2711   and not in *Topology* when the content element installs the resulting resource. The resource name  
2712   comes into existence when the resulting resource is created. When the content element updates the  
2713   resulting resource without changing the resource name, *Name* SHOULD be defined in *Topology*.  
2714   *Name* SHOULD NOT be defined in both places. If a resource name is defined in both *Topology* and  
2715   *ResultingResource*, the values MUST match.
- 2716   See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2717   ▪ **Version:** This is the version of the resource after processing the content element's artifacts. *Version*  
2718   SHOULD be defined for all resulting resources.
- 2719       For example, when update artifacts are processed, this version describes the resource after the  
2720       update is complete.
- 2721   See the *VersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].
- 2722   ▪ **FixName:** Multiple *FixName* elements MAY be included to identify the resulting resource fixes that  
2723   will exist once the content element is applied. The *FixName* SHOULD match the names of fixes that  
2724   can be detected on the system.
- 2725   ▪ **Property:** *Property* elements SHOULD be included to identify property values of the resulting  
2726   resource that will exist after applying the content element.
- 2727   Properties of the resulting resource SHOULD be defined in the *ResultingResource* element and not in  
2728   *Topology*. They SHOULD NOT be defined in both places. If a property is defined in both *Topology*  
2729   and *ResultingResource*, the values MUST match.
- 2730   See the *ResultingPropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.4].
- 2731   ▪ **Relationship:** *Relationship* elements SHOULD be included to identify relationships that will exist after  
2732   applying the content element.
- 2733   See the *RelationshipType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.3].
- 2734   ▪ **resourceRef:** The *resourceRef* attribute MUST identify the resource in *Topology* that will be installed  
2735   or updated when the defining content element is applied.

2736   **4.8.2 ResultingChangeType**



2737  
2738   **Figure 71: ResultingChangeType structure.**

2739 *InstallableUnit* and *ConfigurationUnit* content elements can include zero or more *ResultingChange*  
 2740 elements that describe the key resources whose configuration is modified when the content element's  
 2741 artifacts are processed. *ResultingChange* elements refer to resources in *Topology* and define  
 2742 characteristics of those resources that will become true when the content element is applied.

2743 **4.8.2.1 ResultingChangeType Property Summary**

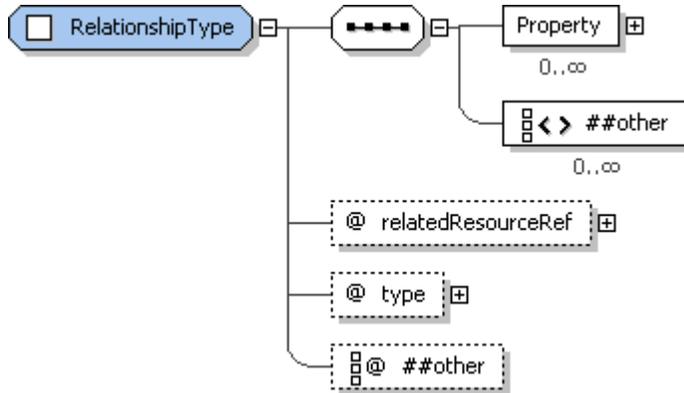
| Name             | Type                   | *    | Description  |
|------------------|------------------------|------|--|
| Description      | DisplayTextType        | 0..1 | Description of the effect of the content element on the changing resource.                             |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType        | 0..1 | Short description of the effect of the content element on the changing resource.                       |
| Condition        | ConditionType          | 0..1 | A condition that determines if the resulting change definition is relevant to a particular deployment. |
| Name             | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | Name of the resulting resource as known in the deployment environment.                                 |
| Property         | ResultingPropertyType  | 0..* | A resulting property setting of the changing resource.   |
| Relationship     | RelationshipType       | 0..* | Specifies a relationship(s) with another resource that will result from this deployment.               |
|                  | xsd:any                | 0..* |  |
| resourceRef      | xsd:IDREF              | 1    | Reference to the resource in topology that will be changed by application of the content element.      |
|                  | xsd:anyAttribute       | 0..* |  |

2744 **4.8.2.2 ResultingChangeType Property Usage Notes**

- 2745 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
 2746 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the effect of the content element on the  
 2747 changing resource.  
 2748 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
 2749 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 2750 ▪ **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the resulting change will be performed by applying the content  
 2751 element only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.  
 2752 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- 2753 ▪ **Name:** The *Name* corresponds with the name of the changed resource as known in the deployment  
 2754 environment. *Name* SHOULD be defined in *Topology* and not in *ResultingChange*, because the name  
 2755 is not changed by processing the content elements artifacts. If *Name* is defined in both places, the  
 2756 values MUST match.  
 2757 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2758 ▪ **Property:** *Property* elements MAY be included to identify property values of the identified resource as  
 2759 they will exist after applying the content element.  
 2760 Properties defined in *ResultingChange* MUST be properties that are modified by processing the  
 2761 content element's artifacts.  
 2762 See the *ResultingPropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.4].
- 2763 ▪ **Relationship:** When application of the content element results in the creation or modification of  
 2764 relationships, the *Relationship* elements SHOULD be included to identify relationships as they will  
 2765 exist after application of the content element.  
 2766 See the *RelationshipType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.3].

- 2767 ▪ **resourceRef**: The *resourceRef* attribute MUST identify the resource whose configuration will be  
2768 modified when the defining content element is applied.  
2769 The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource specified in *Topology*.

2770 **4.8.3 RelationshipType**



2771  
2772 **Figure 72: RelationshipType structure.**

2773 **4.8.3.1 RelationshipType Property Summary**

| Name               | Type             | *    | Description   |
|--------------------|------------------|------|---|
| Property           | PropertyType     | 0..* | A property definition that further constrains the relationship. |
|                    | xsd:any          | 0..* |   |
| relatedResourceRef | xsd:IDREF        | 1    | The second resource in the relationship.                        |
| type               | xsd:QName        | 1    | The type of the relationship.                                   |
|                    | xsd:anyAttribute | 0..* |   |

2774 **4.8.3.2 RelationshipType Property Usage Notes**

- 2775 ▪ **Property**: This element MAY be used to provide additional information about the relationship.  
2776 For example, a connectivity relationship might specify additional information such as the specific  
2777 protocol used (for instance, TCP/IP) and/or particular characteristics of a protocol (for instance,  
2778 port number).  
2779 See the *PropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.3].
- 2780 ▪ **relatedResourceRef**: There are two resources in any relationship. The first is the resource defined in  
2781 the *resourceRef* of the *ResultingResource* or *RelationshipConstraint* element that defines the  
2782 *Relationship* element. The second resource is the one identified by *relatedResourceRef*.  
2783 The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource specified in *Topology*.
- 2784 ▪ **type**: Values for relationship type are not defined by the SDD specification. This type may be  
2785 specified in profiles [5.3].

2786 **4.9 Composite Content Elements**

2787 Composite content elements organize the content of an SDD but do not define artifacts used to deploy  
2788 SDD content. There are three types of composite content elements: *CompositeInstallable*, *CompositeUnit*  
2789 and *CompositeLocalizationUnit*.

2790 *CompositeInstallable* is used any time that more than one content element is defined in support of one  
2791 operation on the package; any time aggregation of SDDs is needed or any time the package includes  
2792 selectable content.

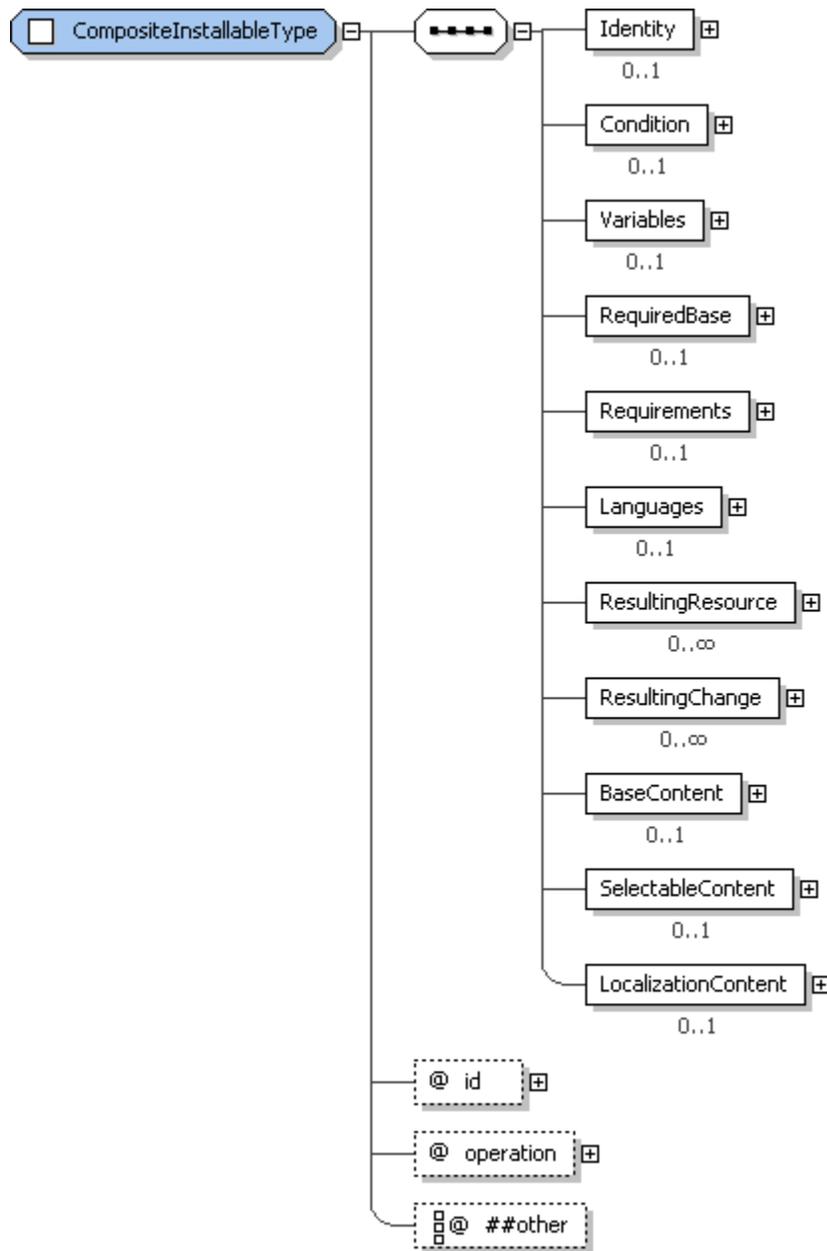
2793 *CompositeInstallable* is the root of a content hierarchy that supports a single deployment lifecycle  
2794 operation. It can define a base content hierarchy, a localization content hierarchy, and/or a selectable  
2795 content hierarchy and selection criteria. Base content defines content that is deployed by default.  
2796 Selectable content defines content that can be selected or not by the deployer. Localization content  
2797 defines content that provides language support. One SDD can have more than one  
2798 *CompositeInstallable*—each supporting a different operation.

2799 *CompositeUnit* is used to organize content elements within the base or selectable content hierarchies.  
2800 *CompositeUnits* can define *InstallableUnits*, *ConfigurationUnits*, *ContainedPackages* and other  
2801 *CompositeUnits*. Requirements, conditions and variables that are common to all content elements defined  
2802 by the *CompositeUnit* can be defined on the *CompositeUnit* to avoid repetition. Within the selectable  
2803 content hierarchy, a *CompositeUnit* can provide an efficient means for selection of a set of related content  
2804 elements by a *Feature*.

2805 *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is described in the Localization section [4.13].

2806

## 4.9.1 CompositeInstallableType



2807

2808

**Figure 73: CompositeInstallableType structure.**

2809

2810

2811

2812

A *CompositeInstallable* supports the definition of metadata about package content for one deployment lifecycle operation. One *CompositeInstallable* can be defined for each operation supported by the software package. When more than one *CompositeInstallable* is defined in an SDD, there MUST NOT be more than one *CompositeInstallable* in scope for a particular deployment defined for any one operation.

2813

### 4.9.1.1 CompositeInstallableType Property Summary

| Name      | Type          | *    | Description   |
|-----------|---------------|------|---|
| Identity  | IdentityType  | 0..1 | Human-understandable identity information about the CompositeInstallable. |
| Condition | ConditionType | 0..1 | A condition that determines if the content of the                         |

|                     |                         |      |  |
|---------------------|-------------------------|------|--|
|                     |                         |      | CompositeInstallable is relevant to a particular deployment.                             |
| Variables           | VariablesType           | 0..1 | Variables for use anywhere below the CompositeInstallable and in Topology.               |
| RequiredBase        | RequiredBaseType        | 0..1 | Resource or resources that can be updated by the CompositeInstallable.                   |
| Requirements        | RequirementsType        | 0..1 | Requirements that must be met before successful application of the CompositeInstallable. |
| Languages           | LanguageSelectionsType  | 0..1 | Defines required and selectable languages and groups of languages.                       |
| ResultingResource   | ResultingResourceType   | 0..* | Resources that result from applying the CompositeInstallable.                            |
| ResultingChange     | ResultingChangeType     | 0..* | Configuration changes that result from applying the CompositeInstallable.                |
| BaseContent         | BaseContentType         | 0..1 | Defines content describing the deployment of core resources.                             |
| SelectableContent   | SelectableContentType   | 0..1 | Defines content describing the deployment of selectable resources.                       |
| LocalizationContent | LocalizationContentType | 0..1 | Defines content whose sole purpose is to provide language support.                       |
| id                  | xsd:ID                  | 1    | A unique identifier for the CompositeInstallable element.                                |
| operation           | OperationType           | 1    | The deployment lifecycle operation described by the CompositeInstallable definition.     |
|                     | xsd:anyAttribute        | 0..* |  |

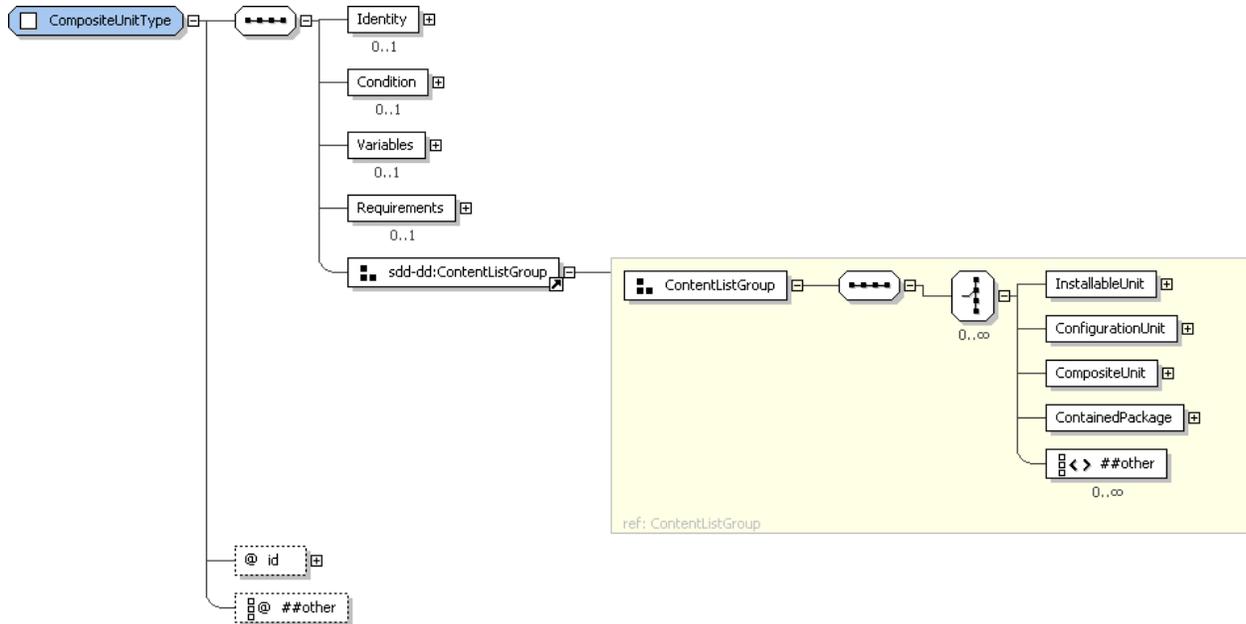
#### 2814 4.9.1.2 CompositeInstallableType Property Usage Notes

- 2815   ▪ **Identity:** This identity MAY have values in common with the identity of a resulting resource created  
2816 when artifacts defined by content of the composite are processed.
- 2817   If the unit of packaging described by the *CompositeInstallable* is known to a package management  
2818 system, the *Identity* elements SHOULD correspond to values associated with that package in the  
2819 package management system.
- 2820   See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
- 2821   ▪ **Condition:** When the condition defined in the *CompositeInstallable* is not met for a particular  
2822 deployment, the *CompositeUnit* and all the content elements defined below the *CompositeUnit* are  
2823 out of scope for that particular deployment.
- 2824   See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- 2825   ▪ **Variables:** Variables defined here are visible throughout the *CompositeInstallable* and in *Topology*.  
2826 See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.3].
- 2827   ▪ **RequiredBase:** When a resource or resources corresponding to the overall software will be modified  
2828 during deployment, that resource or those resources MAY be defined in the *RequiredBase* element.  
2829 The *RequiredBase* definition represents a requirement that the described resource be available for  
2830 modification to apply the single *operation* defined by the *CompositeInstallable*. When *RequiredBase*  
2831 is defined, the *operation* defined by *CompositeInstallable* MUST be one of the following: *update*,  
2832 *undo*, *uninstall*, or *repair*. By specifying the required base separately from other requirements, it is  
2833 possible for consumers of the SDD to easily determine if the base is available before processing  
2834 other requirements.
- 2835   See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].

- 2836   ▪ **Requirements:** These are requirements that must be met regardless of what content is selected for  
2837 deployment and which conditions within the content hierarchy evaluates to true.
- 2838   Requirements that apply only to a portion of the content SHOULD be defined at the point in the  
2839 content hierarchy where they apply.
- 2840   All requirements specified on content elements that are in scope for a particular deployment MUST  
2841 be met. This represents a logical “AND” of the requirements. Care should be taken by the SDD author  
2842 to ensure that conflicting requirements cannot be in scope for the same deployment.
- 2843   See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
- 2844   ▪ **Languages:** When the SDD contains language support, the *Languages* element can be defined to  
2845 describe the languages supported; which languages are required and which are selectable; and how  
2846 language selections are grouped.
- 2847   Languages defined in the *Mandatory* element under *Languages* are always in scope. Languages  
2848 defined in the *Optional* element under *Languages* are in scope if selected by the deployer.
- 2849   The *Languages* element is used to declare the mandatory and optional language support available in  
2850 the package. Languages whose support is deployed by *LocalizationUnits* in *LocalizationContent*  
2851 MUST be defined as either a mandatory language or an optional language. In addition, languages  
2852 whose support is deployed along with other content by *InstallableUnits* in *BaseContent* or  
2853 *SelectableContent* SHOULD be defined as a mandatory language.
- 2854   See the *LanguageSelectionsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.4].
- 2855   ▪ **ResultingResource:** The software whose deployment is described by the SDD can be described in  
2856 the *CompositeInstallable’s ResultingResource* element. This software may consist of many resources  
2857 that are described in the *ResultingResource* elements of the *InstallableUnits* and/or *LocalizationUnits*  
2858 defined within the *CompositeInstallable*.
- 2859   See the *ResultingResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.1].
- 2860   ▪ **ResultingChange:** Configuration changes that result from deployment regardless of selected content  
2861 or condition evaluation can be described in the *CompositeInstallable’s ResultingChange* element.
- 2862   Note that a *ResultingChange* is a change that is made to an existing resource. This is in contrast with  
2863 *ResultingResource*, which describes newly created resources.
- 2864   See the *ResultingChangeType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.2].
- 2865   ▪ **BaseContent:** The base content hierarchy defines content elements that are in scope by default.  
2866 These content elements MAY be conditioned out based on characteristics of the deployment  
2867 environment, but are not optional from the deployer’s perspective.
- 2868   See the *BaseContentType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.11.1].
- 2869   ▪ **SelectableContent:** Content that is selected by feature MUST be defined in the selectable content  
2870 hierarchy. *Groups* and *Features* that select this content are also defined within *SelectableContent*.
- 2871   See the *SelectableContentType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.1].
- 2872   ▪ **LocalizationContent:** All *LocalizationUnits* and *ContainedLocalizationPackages* MUST be defined in  
2873 the *LocalizationContent* hierarchy. Each *LocalizationUnit* contains information about the languages it  
2874 supports and the resources it localizes. This information is evaluated to determine if the  
2875 *LocalizationUnit* is in scope for a particular deployment.
- 2876   Each *LocalizationUnit* and *ContainedLocalizationPackage* defined in *LocalizationContent* MAY  
2877 support any combination of *Mandatory* and *Optional* languages and can localize any combination of  
2878 base and selectable resources, as well as resources already deployed.
- 2879   Some language support may be deployed incidentally by artifacts in an *InstallableUnit* along with  
2880 deployment of other solution content. *LocalizationContent* holds only content elements whose sole  
2881 purpose is to provide language support.
- 2882   *LocalizationContent* supports advanced management of language support, including definition of  
2883 mandatory and optional languages and support of localization materials with a lifecycle that is  
2884 somewhat independent of the resources localized. When an SDD author has no need for advanced

- 2885 management of language support, all language support MAY be delivered with other content in  
 2886 *InstallableUnits*.
- 2887 See the *LocalizationContentType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.1].
- 2888 ▪ **id**: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
 2889 log and trace messages.
  - 2890 ▪ **operation**: This is the *operation* that may be applied to the SDD package whose metadata is  
 2891 described by the *CompositeInstallable*.
- 2892 See the *OperationType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.3.7].

2893 **4.9.2 CompositeUnitType**



2894  
 2895 **Figure 74: CompositeUnitType structure.**

2896 The *CompositeUnit* element is used to organize content elements within the base or selectable content  
 2897 hierarchies. It can define any number of *InstallableUnits*, *ConfigurationUnits*, *ContainedPackages* and  
 2898 other *CompositeUnits*. Composite units assist in organizing the deployment package. A composite unit  
 2899 can provide a convenient way to specify variables, requirements, conditions and other information that  
 2900 applies to every content element defined below the composite unit. Within the selectable content  
 2901 hierarchy, composite units can be used to group content elements that are selected by feature sets or  
 2902 groups. When a feature containing a composite unit is selected, all its child content elements are selected  
 2903 by association. Organization of content within a composite unit does not imply any relationships among  
 2904 the resources that result from deployment of the composite content.

2905 **4.9.2.1 CompositeUnitType Property Summary**

| Name      | Type          | *    | Description  |
|-----------|---------------|------|--|
| Identity  | IdentityType  | 0..1 | Human-understandable identity information about the CompositeUnit.   |
| Condition | ConditionType | 0..1 | A condition that determines if the CompositeUnit and its child content elements are relevant to a particular deployment. |
| Variables | VariablesType | 0..1 | Variables for use within the CompositeUnit's and its child content elements' requirement and artifact definitions.       |

|                   |                       |      |   |
|-------------------|-----------------------|------|---|
| Requirements      | RequirementsType      | 0..1 | Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of any of the CompositeUnit's content. |
| InstallableUnit   | InstallableUnitType   | 0..* | An InstallableUnit that is part of the composite content.   |
| ConfigurationUnit | ConfigurationUnitType | 0..* | A ConfigurationUnit that is part of the composite content.  |
| CompositeUnit     | CompositeUnitType     | 0..* | A CompositeUnit that organizes a subset of the composite's content.                                 |
| ContainedPackage  | ReferencedPackageType | 0..* | A ContainedPackage that is part of the composite content.   |
|                   | xsd:any               | 0..* |   |
| id                | xsd:ID                | 1    | An identifier for the CompositeUnit scoped to the deployment descriptor.                            |
|                   | xsd:anyAttribute      | 0..* |   |

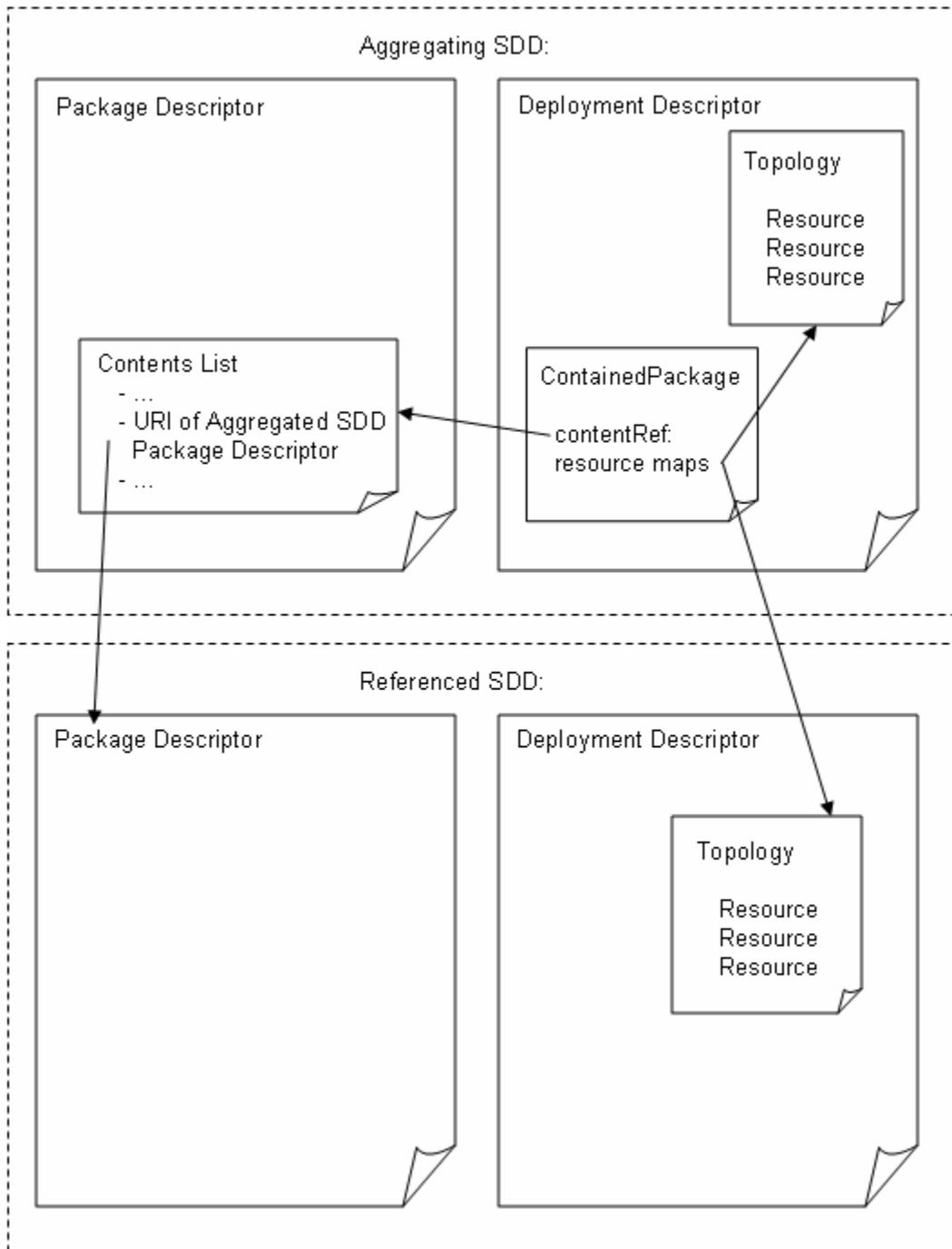
#### 2906 4.9.2.2 CompositeUnitType Property Usage Notes

- 2907
- 2908
- 2909
    - 2910
    - 2911
- If the unit of packaging described by the *CompositeUnit* is known to a package management system, some of the identity elements MAY correspond to values associated with that package in the package management system.
- 2912 See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
- 2913
    - 2914
    - 2915
- 2916 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- 2917
    - 2918
- 2919 These variables are in scope for a particular deployment only if the *CompositeUnit* is in scope for that deployment.
- 2920
- 2921 See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.3].
- 2922
    - 2923
- 2924 These requirements are in scope for a particular deployment only if the *CompositeUnit* is in scope for that deployment.
- 2925
- 2926 The *operation* defined for a *Requirement* defined in a *CompositeUnit* MUST be the same as the *operation* defined by the *CompositeInstallable* containing the *CompositeUnit*.
- 2927
- 2928 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
- 2929
    - 2930
    - 2931
- 2932
- 2933
    - 2934
- 2935
- 2936

## 2937 4.10 Aggregation

2938 SDD packages can aggregate other SDD packages. Metadata about the aggregation is defined in  
2939 *ContainedPackage*, *ContainedLocalizationPackage* and *Requisite* elements. *ContainedPackage*  
2940 elements are content elements that can be defined anywhere in the base and selectable content  
2941 hierarchies. *ContainedLocalizationPackages* are content elements that can be defined in the localization  
2942 content hierarchy. *Requisites* are packages that can be deployed, if necessary, to satisfy requirements in  
2943 the aggregating SDD. They are not content of the SDD package. The type of all three of these elements  
2944 is *ReferencedPackageType*. The term *referenced package* is used in this specification when referring to  
2945 these elements as a group. The term *referenced SDD* is used when referring to any aggregated SDD.

2946 When an SDD aggregates other SDDs, the package descriptors of the aggregated SDDs are included in  
2947 the *Contents* list in the package descriptor of the aggregating SDD (see Figure 75). The referenced  
2948 package elements in the deployment descriptor identify a referenced SDD package by referencing its  
2949 package descriptor definition in *Contents*. Each referenced package element can further constrain the  
2950 deployment of the referenced SDD by defining additional requirements; by mapping resources defined in  
2951 the aggregating SDD to those defined in the referenced SDD; and by determining feature selections for  
2952 deployment of the referenced SDD.



2954

2955

2956

2957

**Figure 75: The aggregating SDD identifies the package descriptor of the aggregated SDD and maps resource definitions in the aggregating SDD to resource definitions in the aggregated SDD.**

2958

2959

2960

2961

2962

2963

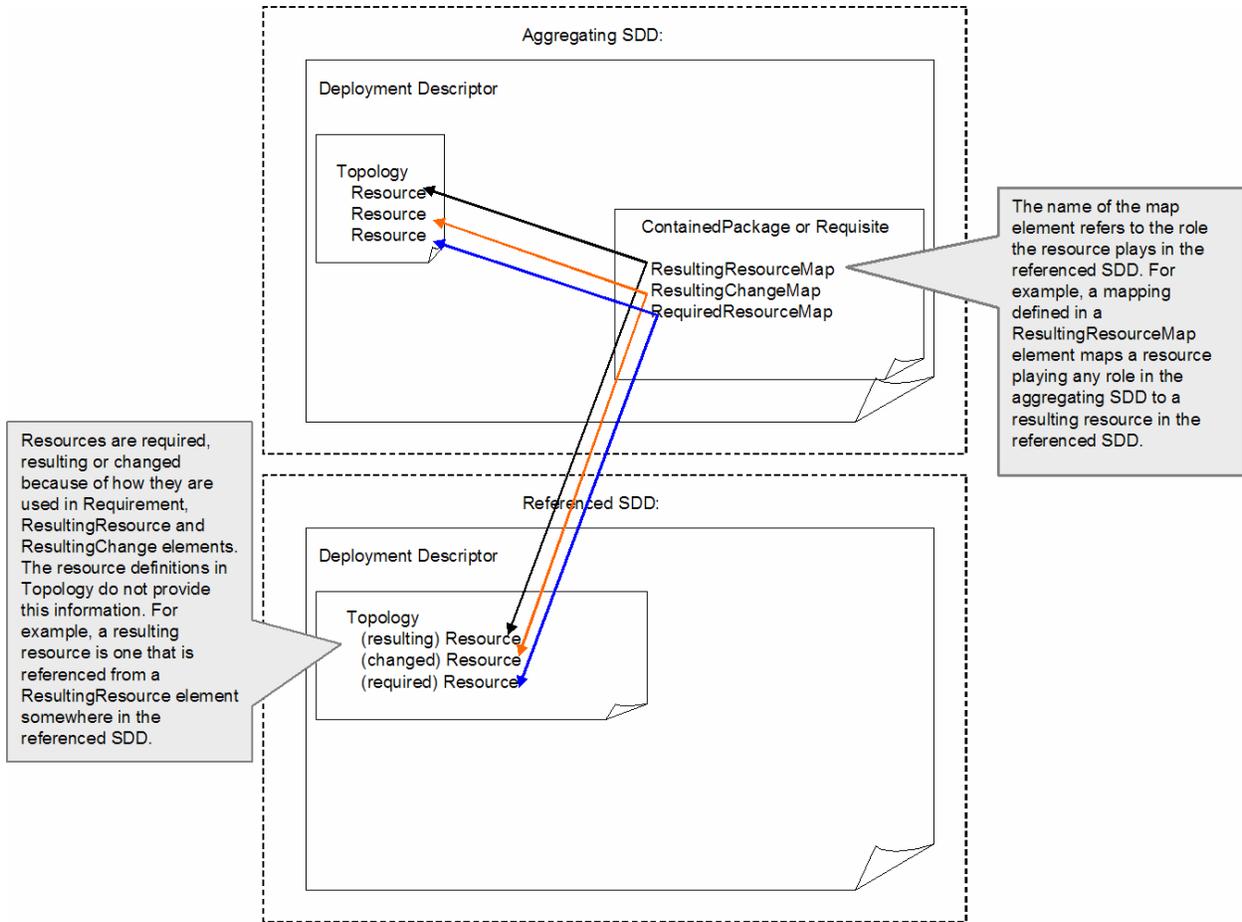
2964

Referenced packages can create and modify software resources that may be required by the aggregating SDD or other SDDs in the aggregation. These resources are mapped to the associated resource definitions in the aggregating SDD by using the *ResultingResourceMap*, the *ResultingChangeMap* and the *RequiredResourceMap* elements of a referenced package element. The characteristics of these resources that other SDDs in the aggregation depend on in some way MUST be exposed in the *ResultingResourceMap*, the *ResultingChangeMap* and the *RequiredResourceMap* elements of the aggregating SDD (see Figure 76). These exposed characteristics are mapped to requirements, conditions

2965 and resource variables in the SDDs to determine if requirements are satisfied, conditions are met and to  
2966 set the values of resource property variables (see Figure 77).

2967

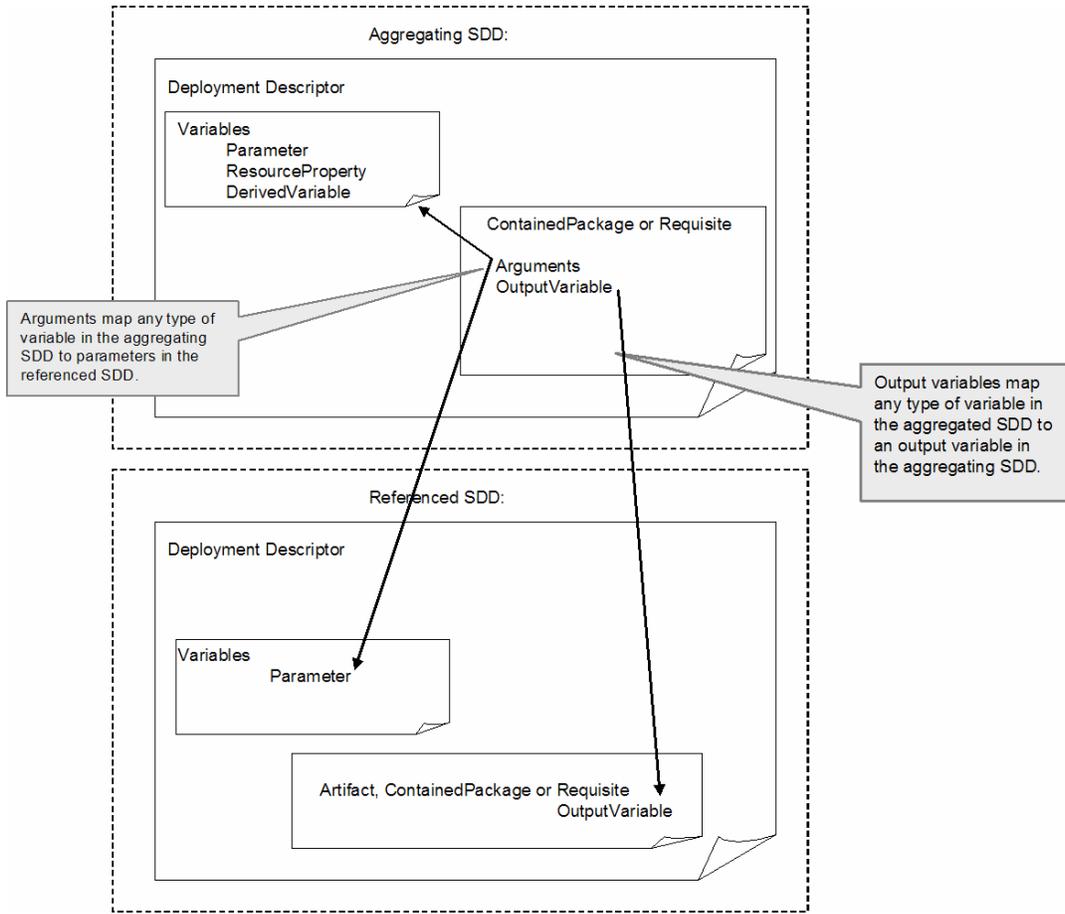
2968



2969

2970 **Figure 76: The list of resource maps is segmented by the role the resource plays in the referenced**  
2971 **SDD.**

2972



2973

2974

2975

**Figure 77: Arguments and OutputVariables of ReferencedPackageType map variables in the aggregating SDD to variables in the referenced SDD.**



|                          |                              |      |   |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|------|---|
|                          |                              |      | is relevant to a particular deployment.   |
| RequiredContentSelection | RequiredContentSelectionType | 0..1 | A list of groups and features that MUST be selected when the referenced package is deployed.  |
| Arguments                | ArgumentListType             | 0..1 | Inputs to the reference package.  |
| OutputVariables          | OutputVariableListType       | 0..1 | Outputs from the referenced package.  |
| Requirements             | RequirementsType             | 0..1 | Additional requirements for deploying the referenced package as part of the aggregation.  |
| ResultingResourceMap     | ResultingResourceMapType     | 0..* | Maps resulting resources in the referenced package to resources in the referencing package and exposes properties of the resulting resource.            |
| ResultingChangeMap       | ResultingChangeMapType       | 0..* | Maps changed resources defined in the referenced package to resources in the referencing package and exposes changed properties of the resource.        |
| RequiredResourceMap      | ResourceMapType              | 0..* | Maps required resources in the referenced package to resources in the referencing package.  |
| Languages                | LanguagesType                | 0..1 | Languages supported by the referenced package.  |
|                          | xsd:any                      | 0..* |   |
| id                       | xsd:ID                       | 1    | Identifier for the referenced package element that is unique within the deployment descriptor.  |
| contentRef               | xsd:token                    | 1    | Reference to the identifier of the package Content defined in the package descriptor which identifies the package descriptor of the referenced package. |
| weight                   | xsd:positiveInteger          | 0..1 | The time required to process the referenced package relative to all artifacts and other referenced packages in the SDD.                                 |
| operation                | OperationType                | 0..1 | Specifies which operation in the referenced SDD is performed.   |
|                          | xsd:anyAttribute             | 0..* |   |

#### 2985 4.10.1.2 ReferencedPackageType Property Usage Notes

- 2986
- 2987
- 2988
- 2989
- 2990
- 2991
- 2992
- 2993
- 2994
- 2995
- 2996
- 2997
- 2998
- **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the *ReferencedPackage's* content should only be deployed when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.  
See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
  - **RequiredContentSelection:** Certain *Groups* or *Features* may need to be selected when deploying the referenced package. These can be identified in the *RequiredContentSelection* element.  
If one particular aggregated SDD requires the selection of different groups or features, depending on other choices made during a particular deployment, different *Requisite* or *ContainedPackage* elements can be defined in a way that will cause the correct combination of *Groups* and *Features* to be used in each situation.  
See the *RequiredContentSelectionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.13].
  - **Arguments:** Arguments are used to provide values for input variables defined in the deployment descriptor of the referenced package. The argument name specified MUST reference the *id* of a parameter in the referenced package.

- 2999 See the *ArgumentListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.8].
- 3000 ▪ **OutputVariables:** The output variable mapping can be used to set variables to outputs created by  
 3001 processing the referenced SDD. The output variables in the referenced package are mapped to  
 3002 output variables in the aggregating SDD.
- 3003 Each output variable value specified MUST reference the *id* of an output variable in the referenced  
 3004 package. This can be an output variable from an artifact or an output variable from a referenced  
 3005 package defined within the referenced SDD.
- 3006 See the *OutputVariableListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.10].
- 3007 ▪ **Requirements:** When the aggregating SDD has stricter requirements for the use of the referenced  
 3008 SDD than are defined by the referenced SDD itself, those requirements can be defined in  
 3009 *Requirements*. This is not intended to repeat requirements expressed in the referenced SDD, but  
 3010 rather to add additional stricter requirements.
- 3011 Requirements expressed in the referenced SDD need to be satisfied, in addition to the requirements  
 3012 expressed in the *Requisite* or *ContainedPackage* element of the aggregating SDD.
- 3013 Requirements expressed in the aggregating SDD MUST NOT conflict with requirements expressed in  
 3014 the referenced SDD. The requirements specified MUST further constrain the referenced package.
- 3015 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
- 3016 ▪ **ResultingResourceMap:** Resources created by the referenced package may be resources that are  
 3017 defined in the aggregating SDD. The *ResultingResourceMap* is used to identify the correspondence  
 3018 between resource definitions in the aggregating SDD and resulting resource definitions in the  
 3019 aggregated SDD.
- 3020 Characteristics of the resulting resources MAY be exposed in the *ResultingResourceMap* element.  
 3021 *ResourceConstraints* defined on those resources anywhere in the aggregation are mapped to the  
 3022 resource properties exposed in the resulting maps of the referenced package to determine if the  
 3023 referenced package will satisfy the constraints. Each individual constraint is considered met by the  
 3024 referenced package if a property exposed in the resulting resource map that is in scope for the  
 3025 particular deployment satisfies the constraint.
- 3026 For example, a property constraint in a *ResourceConstraint* element states that the property  
 3027 named "FileAttributes" has the value "Writeable". The *resourceRef* in the *ResourceConstraint*  
 3028 identifies a resource defined in *Topology* that is also identified in the *ResultingResourceMap* of a  
 3029 *Requisite* or *ContainedPackage* element that is in scope for the particular deployment. If the  
 3030 *ResultingResourceMap* element contains a statement that the property named "FileAttributes"  
 3031 has the value "Writeable", then the *ResourceConstraint* is met when the *Requisite* or  
 3032 *ContainedPackage* is deployed.
- 3033 This same logic applies to *ResourceConstraints* in aggregated packages. If the SDD in the preceding  
 3034 example also aggregates another SDD and maps the same resource to a required resource in that  
 3035 aggregated SDD, then all *ResourceConstraints* in the aggregated SDD are met only if the  
 3036 *ResultingResourceMap* of the referenced SDD that creates that resource contains a *Name*, *Version*  
 3037 or *Property* definition that satisfies the constraint.
- 3038 See the *ResultingResourceMapType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.3].
- 3039 ▪ **ResultingChangeMap:** Resources configured by the referenced package may be resources that are  
 3040 defined in the aggregating SDD. The *ResultingChangeMap* is used to identify the correspondence  
 3041 between resource definitions in the aggregating SDD and changed resources defined in  
 3042 *ResultingChange* elements of the aggregated SDD.
- 3043 Characteristics of resources that are changed by the referenced SDD MAY be exposed in the  
 3044 *ResultingChangeMap*. These are correlated with *ResourceConstraints* on the changed resource in  
 3045 the same manner as the exposed characteristics of a resulting resource. See the property usage  
 3046 notes for *ResultingResourceMap* above.
- 3047 See the *ResultingChangeMapType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.4].
- 3048 ▪ **RequiredResourceMap:** When a resource required by the aggregated SDD is a resource also  
 3049 defined in the aggregating SDD, the *RequiredResourceMap* is used to identify the correspondence.

3050 This element is a simple mapping of a resource in one SDD to a resource in another. There is no  
3051 need to expose characteristics of the resource because it is not created or modified by the referenced  
3052 package.

3053 One resource MAY be required, resulting, changed, all three or any combination of these within one  
3054 SDD. When a resource in the referenced SDD plays more than one role, the mapping MUST be  
3055 repeated everywhere it applies. This allows exposure of all the created or modified properties in the  
3056 *ResultingChangeMap* and *ResultingResourceMap*. In this situation—when one resource in the  
3057 referenced SDD plays more than one of the roles identified earlier (required, resulting or changed)—all  
3058 mappings MUST be to the same resource in the aggregating SDD. Only the exposed resulting and  
3059 changed properties differ.

3060 See the *ResourceMapType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.2].

3061 ▪ **Languages:** Languages supported by the referenced package MAY be identified here. This list does  
3062 not identify mandatory versus optional languages; it is for informational purposes only. The SDD  
3063 author is not limiting use of the referenced package to deployments where all in-scope languages are  
3064 found in this list. There may be cases where aggregated packages are deployed even though they  
3065 cannot support all of the languages supported by the aggregation as a whole.

3066 Each language specified MUST match a language in the referenced package.

3067 See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].

3068 ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
3069 log and trace messages.

3070 ▪ **contentRef:** The package descriptor of an SDD that aggregates other SDDs, either through  
3071 *ContainedPackage* elements or *Requisite* elements, will list the package descriptor files of the  
3072 aggregated SDDs in its content list. The *contentRef* attribute of a referenced package element MUST  
3073 be a reference to the *id* of a *Content* element in the aggregating SDD's package descriptor that  
3074 defines the aggregated package descriptor.

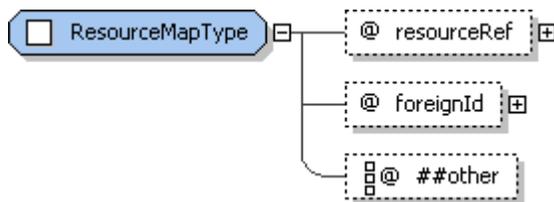
3075 ▪ **weight:** Defining weights for all artifacts and referenced packages in an SDD provides useful  
3076 information to software that manages deployment. The weight of the referenced package refers to the  
3077 relative time taken to deploy the referenced package with respect to other packages in this SDD.

3078 For example, if the referenced package takes twice as long to deploy as a particular install artifact  
3079 whose weight is "4", then the weight of the referenced package would be "8". The weight numbers  
3080 have no meaning in isolation and do not describe actual time elapsed. They simply provide an  
3081 estimate of relative time.

3082 ▪ **operation:** The referenced SDD may support more than one deployment lifecycle operation. The  
3083 *operation* attribute MUST include the operations that are applicable when this is the case.

3084 See the *OperationType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.3.7].

## 3085 4.10.2 ResourceMapType



3086  
3087 **Figure 79: ResourceMapType structure.**

3088 *ResourceMapType* is used in the definition of elements that map resources in an SDD to resources in a  
3089 referenced SDD. The purpose of a resource map is to identify when two resources in separate SDDs  
3090 MUST resolve to the same resource instance during any particular deployment. The characteristics of a  
3091 mapped resource that are defined in the topology sections of the two SDDs MUST NOT conflict.

3092 For example, if a *Name* is defined for the resource in both topologies, it MUST be the same in both  
3093 definitions and if a *Property* definition is included for the same property in both places, the value  
3094 MUST be the same.

3095 Additional characteristics of a mapped resource may be constrained by *Requirements* or *Conditions* in  
 3096 either SDD. All constraints on a mapped resource that are in scope for a particular deployment MUST  
 3097 NOT conflict.

3098 Resources that are not mapped between the two SDDs MAY resolve to the same instance when their  
 3099 characteristics defined in topology do not conflict and when the constraints in scope for any particular  
 3100 deployment do not conflict.

3101 The *RequiredResourceMap*, *ResultingResourceMap* and *ResultingChangeMap* elements all use  
 3102 *ResourceMapType*, either directly or as a base type that is extended.

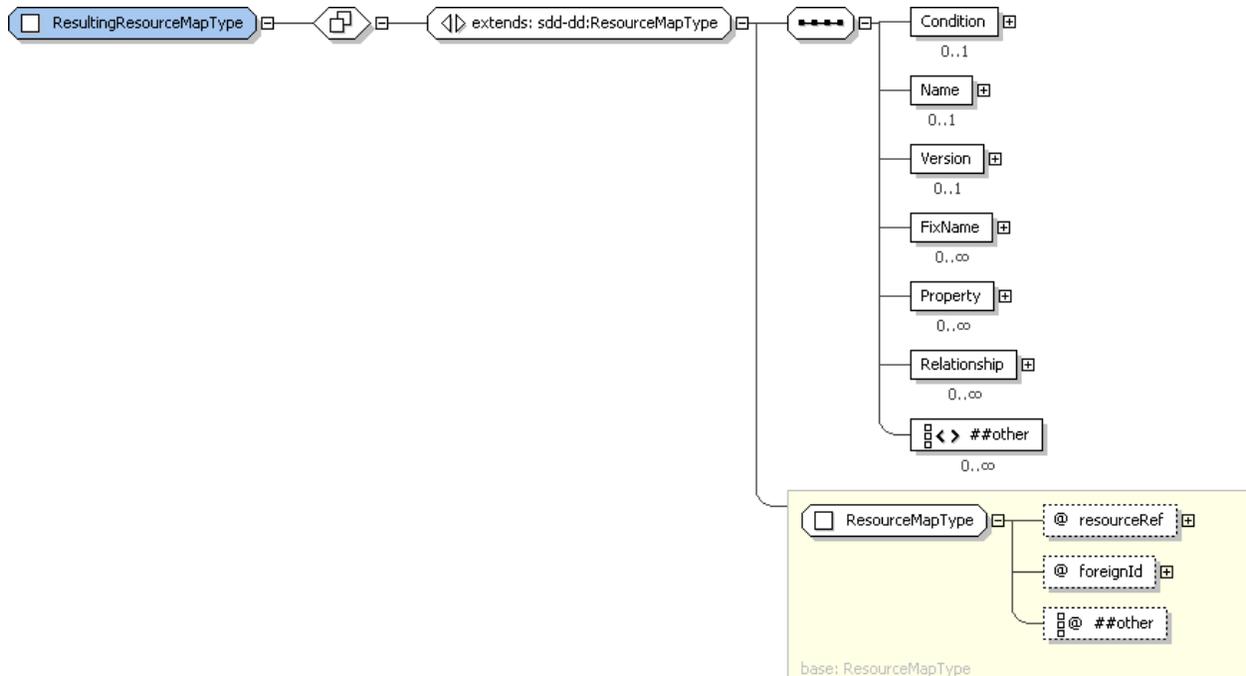
3103 **4.10.2.1 ResourceMapType Property Summary**

| Name        | Type             | *    | Description  |
|-------------|------------------|------|--|
| resourceRef | xsd:IDREF        | 1    | Reference to a resource defined in the deployment descriptor.          |
| foreignID   | xsd:NCName       | 0..1 | Reference to a resource defined in a referenced deployment descriptor. |
|             | xsd:anyAttribute | 0..* |  |

3104 **4.10.2.2 ResourceMapType Property Usage Notes**

- 3105 ▪ **resourceRef**: The value of the *resourceRef* MUST be set to the *id* of the resource in the SDD to be  
 3106 mapped to a resource in a referenced SDD.
- 3107 ▪ **foreignID**: The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource in the referenced package. This is the  
 3108 resource in the referenced SDD that MUST resolve to the same resource instance as the resource  
 3109 identified in *resourceRef*.

3110 **4.10.3 ResultingResourceMapType**



3111 **Figure 80: ResultingResourceMapType structure.**

3113 *ResultingResourceMapType* defines an element type that maps resources that result from deployment of  
 3114 the referenced SDD to a resource in the referencing SDD. In addition to identifying the two resources that  
 3115 MUST resolve to the same resource instance, the resulting resource map allows characteristics of the  
 3116 resulting resource to be exposed. There may be constraints defined on the mapped resource in the

3117 referencing SDD or any referenced SDD in the hierarchy of SDDs. These constraints can be evaluated by  
 3118 comparing the constraint to the exposed characteristics defined in the resulting resource map. The  
 3119 resulting resource map MUST expose sufficient characteristics of the resulting resource to support  
 3120 successful evaluation of constraints on that resource.

3121 For example, say that the SDD defines a resource with id="Database" in its topology. The solution  
 3122 can work with Database Product A or Database Product B. Database Product A is created by a  
 3123 referenced SDD defined in a *Requisites* element. The SDD will contain *Requirements* and/or  
 3124 *Conditions* that have alternatives for each of the database products. All constraints on the Database  
 3125 resource that apply to Database Product A must be satisfied by a resource characteristic exposed in  
 3126 the *ResultingResourceMap* element of the *Requisite* element that points to the SDD that deploys  
 3127 Database Product A.

3128 **4.10.3.1 ResultingResourceMapType Property Summary**

| Name         | Type                      | *    | Description  |
|--------------|---------------------------|------|--|
|              | [extends] ResourceMapType |      | See the ResourceMapType section for additional properties [4.10.2].                                      |
| Condition    | ConditionType             | 0..1 | A condition that determines if the resulting resource definition is relevant to a particular deployment. |
| Name         | VariableExpressionType    | 0..1 | The name of the resource created or updated by the referenced SDD.                                       |
| Version      | VersionType               | 0..1 | The version of the resource created or updated by the referenced SDD.                                    |
| FixName      | xsd:string                | 0..* | Names of fixes to the mapped resource that are created by the referenced SDD.                            |
| Property     | ResultingPropertyType     | 0..* | Properties set when the mapped resource is created or updated by the referenced SDD.                     |
| Relationship | RelationshipType          | 0..* | Relationship that will exist after creating or updating the resource.                                    |
|              | xsd:any                   | 0..* |  |

3129 **4.10.3.2 ResultingResourceMapType Property Usage Notes**

3130 See the *ResourceMapType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.10.2].

3131 ▪ **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the resulting resource will be created by the referenced  
 3132 package only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.

3133 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

3134 ▪ **Name:** The *Name* of the resulting resource created or updated by the referenced SDD MUST be  
 3135 defined if it is not defined elsewhere and there are constraints on this resource that contain a *Name*  
 3136 element. "Defined elsewhere" means defined in the topology of the referencing SDD or in the  
 3137 topology of any other referenced SDD for a resource that is also mapped to the same resource.  
 3138 "Constraints on this resource" means a constraint that applies to the particular instantiation of the  
 3139 resource that is created or updated by the referenced SDD, for example a constraint that needs to  
 3140 successfully map to the referenced SDD for the referenced SDD to be used in a particular  
 3141 deployment.

3142 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

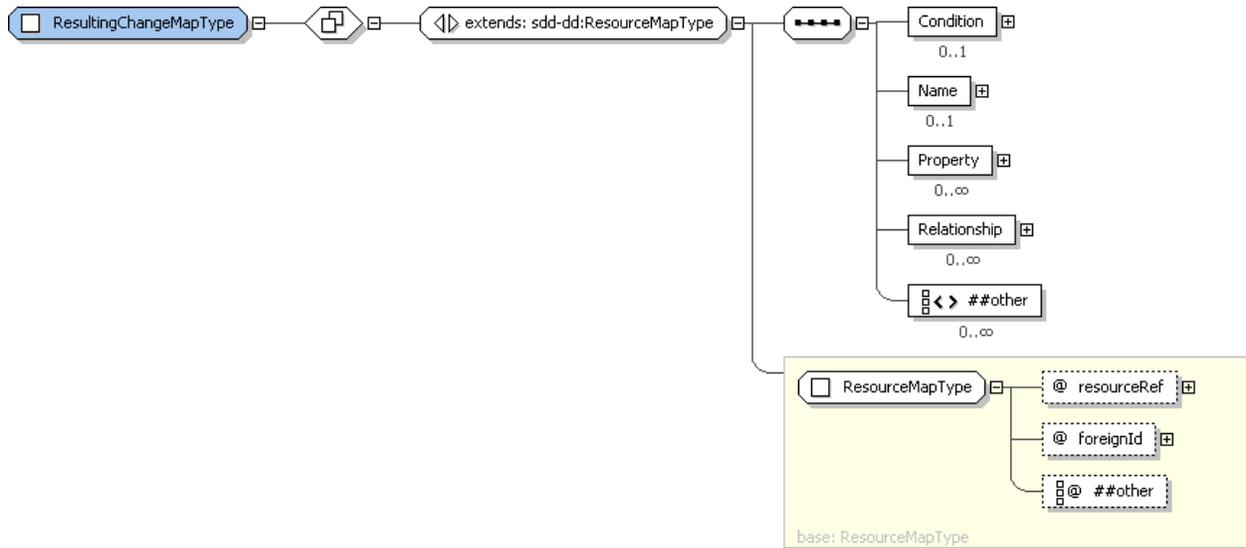
3143 ▪ **Version:** The *Version* of the resulting resource created or updated by the referenced SDD MUST be  
 3144 defined if it is not defined elsewhere and there are version constraints defined on this resource. (See  
 3145 the usage note for *Name* above for a definition of "defined elsewhere".)

3146 See the *VersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].

3147 ▪ **FixName:** One or more names of fixes to the resulting resource created or updated by the referenced  
 3148 SDD MUST be defined if they are not defined elsewhere and there are version constraints defined on

- 3149 this resource that include fix names. (See the usage note for *Name* above for a definition of “defined  
 3150 elsewhere”.)
- 3151 ▪ **Property:** A *Property* of the resulting resource created or updated by the referenced SDD MUST be  
 3152 defined if it is not defined elsewhere and there are property constraints on this property. (See the  
 3153 usage note for *Name* above for a definition of “defined elsewhere”).
  - 3154 See the *ResultingPropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.4].
  - 3155 ▪ **Relationship:** Any number of *Relationship* elements can be included to identify relationships that will  
 3156 exist after applying the referenced package.
  - 3157 See the *RelationshipType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.3].

3158 **4.10.4 ResultingChangeMapType**



3159  
 3160 **Figure 81: ResultingChangeMapType structure.**

3161 *ResultingChangeMapType* is very similar to *ResultingResourceMapType*. It defines an element type that  
 3162 maps resources that are changed by deployment of the referenced SDD to a resource in the referencing  
 3163 SDD. In addition to identifying the two resources that MUST resolve to the same resource instance, the  
 3164 resulting change map allows characteristics of the modified resource to be exposed. There may be  
 3165 constraints defined on the mapped resource in the referencing SDD or any referenced SDD in the  
 3166 hierarchy of SDDs. These constraints can be evaluated by comparing the constraint to the exposed  
 3167 characteristics defined in the resulting change map. The resulting change map MUST expose sufficient  
 3168 characteristics of the resulting change to support successful evaluation of constraints on that resource.

3169 For example, say that the SDD defines a resource with id="OS" in its topology. The solution can work  
 3170 with Windows or Linux. Linux is configured by a referenced SDD defined in a *Requisites* element. The  
 3171 SDD will contain *Requirements* and/or *Conditions* that have alternatives for Windows and for Linux.  
 3172 All constraints on the modified characteristics of Linux must be satisfied by a resource characteristic  
 3173 exposed in the *ResultingChangeMap* element of the *Requisite* element that points to the SDD that  
 3174 configures Linux.

3175 **4.10.4.1 ResultingChangeMapType Property Summary**

| Name      | Type                      | *    | Description  |
|-----------|---------------------------|------|--|
|           | [extends] ResourceMapType |      | See the ResourceMapType section for additional properties [4.10.2].                                    |
| Condition | ConditionType             | 0..1 | A condition that determines if the resulting change definition is relevant to a particular deployment. |

|              |                        |      |   |
|--------------|------------------------|------|---|
| Name         | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | The name of the modified resource.  |
| Property     | ResultingPropertyType  | 0..* | A modified property of the resource.                                      |
| Relationship | RelationshipType       | 0..* | Relationship that will exist after the change is applied to the resource. |
|              | xsd:any                | 0..* |   |

#### 3176 4.10.4.2 ResultingChangeMapType Property Usage Notes

3177 See the *ResourceMapType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.10.2].

3178 ▪ **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the resource mapped from the external package will be  
3179 changed only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.

3180 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

3181 ▪ **Name:** The *Name* of the resource that is modified by the referenced SDD is defined here to assist  
3182 with identifying the resource instance that is changed. It is not an indication that the resource name  
3183 itself is modified by the referenced SDD. If resource characteristics defined in the topology of any  
3184 SDD defining a resource mapped to the changed resource are sufficient to identify the resource, then  
3185 *Name* SHOULD NOT be defined in the *ResultingChangeMap*.

3186 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

3187 ▪ **Property:** A modified property MUST be exposed in a *ResultingChangeMap* if it is not defined  
3188 elsewhere and there are property constraints on the modified property. “Defined elsewhere” means  
3189 defined in the topology of the referencing SDD or in the topology of any other referenced SDD for a  
3190 resource that is also mapped to the same resource. “Constraints on the modified property” means a  
3191 property constraint that applies to the particular instantiation of the resource that is modified by the  
3192 referenced SDD, for example a constraint that needs to successfully map to the referenced SDD for  
3193 the referenced SDD to be used in a particular deployment.

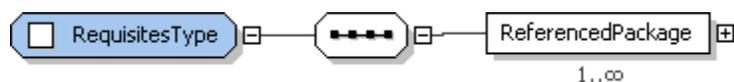
3194 See the *ResultingPropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.4].

3195 ▪ **Relationship:** *Relationship* elements SHOULD be included to identify relationships that will exist after  
3196 the application of the referenced package.

3197 Relationships that need to be known by the aggregate MUST be mapped. Relationships need to be  
3198 known when they are referred to in one or more resource constraints.

3199 See the *RelationshipType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.3].

#### 3200 4.10.5 RequisitesType



3201

3202 **Figure 82: RequisitesType structure.**

3203 The *Requisites* element contains a list of references to SDD packages that can be used to satisfy one or  
3204 more of the requirements defined by content elements. The definition of a requisite does not imply that it  
3205 must be used; only that it is available for use if needed.

3206 Requisite definitions can map values and resources defined in the SDD to inputs and resources defined  
3207 in the requisite SDD.

#### 3208 4.10.5.1 RequisitesType Property Summary

| Name              | Type                  | *    | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------------------|------|--|
| ReferencedPackage | ReferencedPackageType | 1..* | An SDD package that can, but is not required to, be deployed to satisfy a requirement. |

3209 **4.10.5.2 RequisitesType Property Usage Notes**

- 3210 ▪ **ReferencedPackage:** See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage  
3211 details [4.10.1].

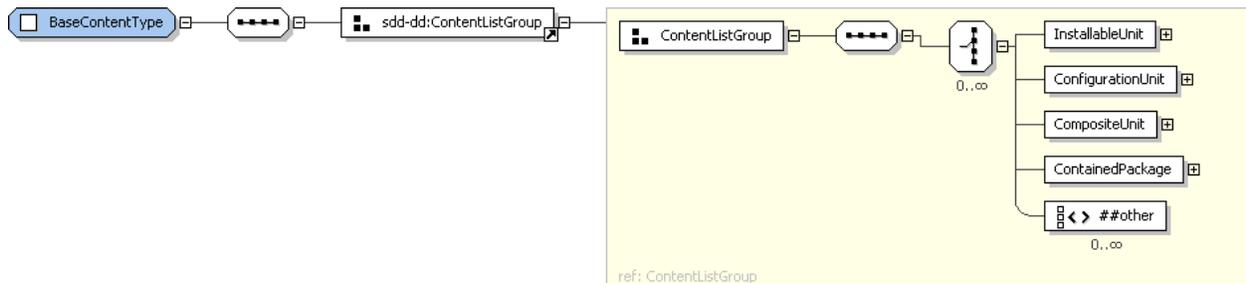
3212 **4.11 Base Content**

3213 Base content is the default content for the deployment lifecycle operation associated with the  
3214 *CompositeInstallable* that contains the base content. This is content that is deployed whenever the  
3215 associated operation is performed on the SDD package. Base content may be conditioned on  
3216 characteristics of the deployment environment but it is not selectable by the deployer.

3217 Resources associated with base content for one operation may be different from resources associated  
3218 with base content for a different operation in the same SDD package.

3219 For example, base content in the *CompositeInstallable* for the configuration operation may configure  
3220 resources that were created by selectable content in the *CompositeInstallable* for the install  
3221 operation. In this example, the configuration is in base content because it must be done if the  
3222 resource exists. It is not selectable by the deployer during the configuration operation.

3223 **4.11.1 BaseContentType**



3224 **Figure 83: BaseContentType structure.**  
3225

3226 The *BaseContent* hierarchy defines the default content for the deployment operation described by the  
3227 *CompositeInstallable*. This content MAY be conditioned.

3228 **4.11.1.1 BaseContentType Property Summary**

| Name              | Type                  | *    | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------------------|------|---|
| InstallableUnit   | InstallableUnitType   | 0..* | An InstallableUnit that defines base content.   |
| ConfigurationUnit | ConfigurationUnitType | 0..* | A ConfigurationUnit that defines base configuration content.                              |
| CompositeUnit     | CompositeUnitType     | 0..* | A CompositeUnit that organizes base content.  |
| ContainedPackage  | ReferencedPackageType | 0..* | An SDD whose content is considered to be base content in the context of this aggregation. |
|                   | xsd:any               | 0..* |   |

3229 **4.11.1.2 BaseContentType Property Usage Notes**

- 3230 ▪ **InstallableUnit:** See the *InstallableUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.1].
- 3231 ▪ **ConfigurationUnit:** See the *ConfigurationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details  
3232 [4.3.2].
- 3233 ▪ **CompositeUnit:** See the *CompositeUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details  
3234 [4.9.2].

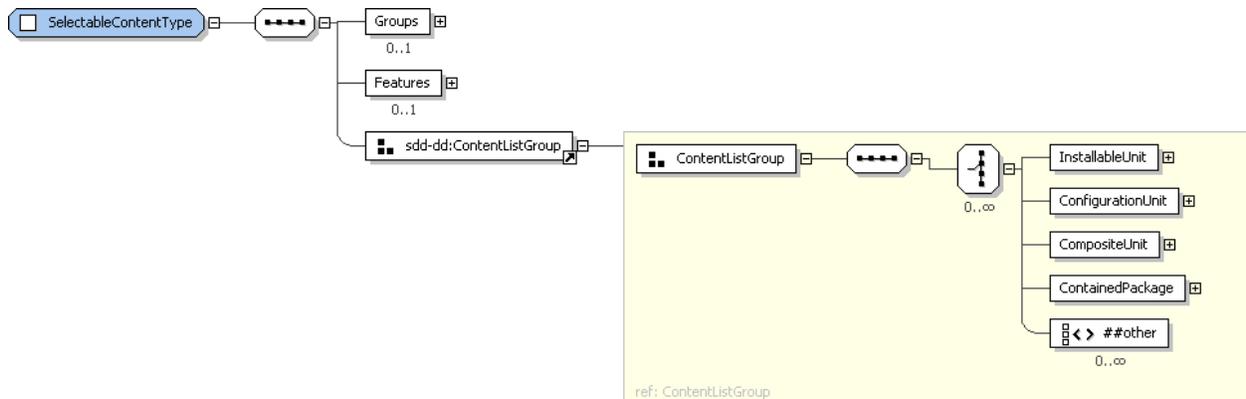
3235   ▪ **ContainedPackage**: See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage  
 3236 details [4.10.1].

## 3237 4.12 Content Selectability

3238 The SDD author MAY define selectable subsets of content using *Groups* and *Features*. Selectability, as  
 3239 used in the SDD, is a characteristic of the deployment lifecycle operation and the package. The decision  
 3240 to provide selectability for one operation in one package has no semantic relationship to the selectability  
 3241 provided in another package related to the same software. It also has no semantic relationship to the  
 3242 selectability provided for a different operation within the same package.

3243 For example, when the SDD author chooses to create a feature in a maintenance package, that  
 3244 feature is designed to allow selectable application of the maintenance, not to reflect the original set of  
 3245 features for the base content.

### 3246 4.12.1 SelectableContentType



3247  
 3248 **Figure 84: SelectableContentType structure.**

3249 Content elements defined here make up the selectable content hierarchy. These elements are selected  
 3250 via *Groups* and *Features* also defined under *SelectableContent*.

#### 3251 4.12.1.1 SelectableContentType Property Summary

| Name              | Type                  | *    | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------------------|------|---|
| Groups            | GroupsType            | 0..1 | Groups of features that can be selected as a unit.                                |
| Features          | FeaturesType          | 0..1 | A definition of user-selectable content.  |
| InstallableUnit   | InstallableUnitType   | 0..* | An InstallableUnit that defines selectable content.                               |
| ConfigurationUnit | ConfigurationUnitType | 0..* | A ConfigurationUnit that defines selectable configuration.                        |
| CompositeUnit     | CompositeUnitType     | 0..* | A CompositeUnit that organizes content elements that define selectable content.   |
| ContainedPackage  | ReferencedPackageType | 0..* | An SDD package whose content is selectable in the context of the aggregating SDD. |
|                   | xsd:any               | 0..* |   |

#### 3252 4.12.1.2 SelectableContentType Property Usage Notes

3253   ▪ **Groups**: *Groups* can be used by the SDD author to define a convenient way for deployers to select a  
 3254 group of features.

3255 “Typical” and “Custom” are examples of groups that are commonly presented in installation  
 3256 interfaces.

3257 See the *GroupsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.2].

- 3258 ▪ **Features:** *Features* can be used to organize optional functionality into meaningful selections.  
 3259 *Features* should be meaningful from the deployer’s point of view.

3260 See the *FeaturesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.4].

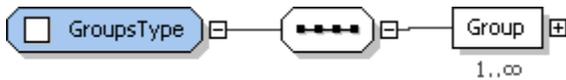
- 3261 ▪ **InstallableUnit:** See the *InstallableUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.1].

- 3262 ▪ **ConfigurationUnit:** See the *ConfigurationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details  
 3263 [4.3.2].

- 3264 ▪ **CompositeUnit:** See the *CompositeUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details  
 3265 [4.9.2].

- 3266 ▪ **ContainedPackage:** See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage  
 3267 details [4.10.1].

## 3268 4.12.2 GroupsType



3269  
 3270 **Figure 85: Groups structure.**

3271 *GroupsType* is used in *SelectableContent* to provide a list of one or more *Group* elements.

### 3272 4.12.2.1 GroupsType Property Summary

| Name  | Type      | *    | Description  |
|-------|-----------|------|--|
| Group | GroupType | 1..* | A group of features that can be selected together. |

### 3273 4.12.2.2 GroupsType Property Usage Notes

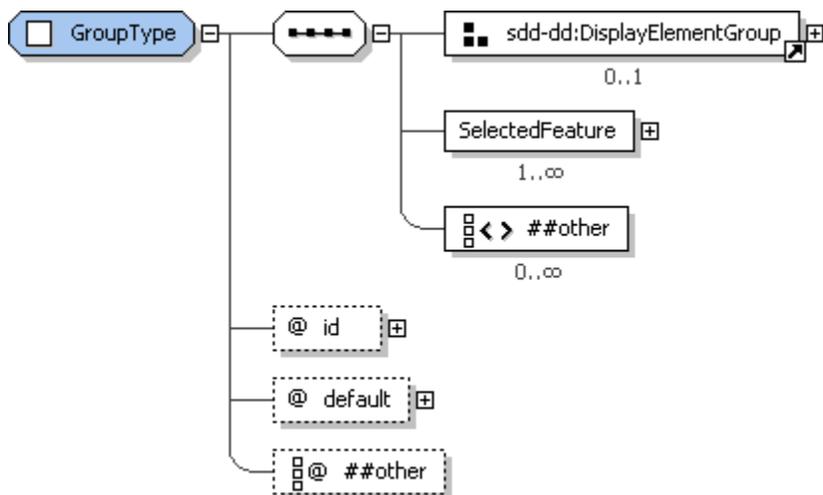
- 3274 ▪ **Group:** Associating features in a *Group* is based on the characteristics of the package and the ways  
 3275 in which the SDD author chooses to expose function variability to the deployer.

3276 One example is a “Typical” group that allows easy selection of the most common grouping of  
 3277 features, along with a “Custom” group that allows an advanced user to select from among all  
 3278 features. Another example is a “Client” group that selects features that deploy the client software  
 3279 for an application, along with a “Server” group that selects features that deploy the server  
 3280 software for the same application.

3281 If alternative sets of selections are desired, Groups MUST be used to define these sets. Zero or one  
 3282 set can be selected for any particular deployment

3283 See the *GroupType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.3].

3284 **4.12.3 GroupType**



3285  
3286 **Figure 86: GroupType structure.**

3287 *GroupType* provides the type definition for each *Group* element in *SelectableContent*'s list of *Groups*. For  
3288 a particular deployment, zero or one groups may be selected by the deployer.

3289 **4.12.3.1 GroupType Property Summary**

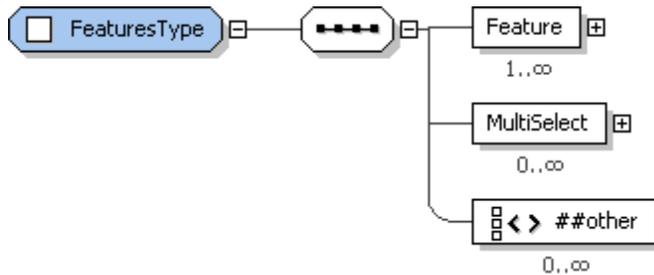
| Name             | Type                 | *    | Description   |
|------------------|----------------------|------|---|
| DisplayName      | DisplayTextType      | 0..1 | A human-readable name for the group.  |
| Description      | DisplayTextType      | 0..1 | A human-readable description of the group.  |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType      | 0..1 | A human-readable short description of the group.  |
| SelectedFeature  | FeatureReferenceType | 1..* | A feature that is part of the group.  |
|                  | xsd:any              | 0..* |   |
| id               | xsd:ID               | 1    | An identifier of the group that is unique within the descriptor.  |
| default          | xsd:boolean          | 0..1 | Indicates that the group is selected by default when no selections are provided by the deployer.<br>**default value="false" |
|                  | xsd:anyAttribute     | 0..* |   |

3290 **4.12.3.2 GroupType Property Usage Notes**

- 3291 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
3292 MUST provide a label for the group.  
3293 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 3294 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
3295 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the group.  
3296 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
3297 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 3298 ▪ **SelectedFeature:** Each *SelectedFeature* is considered selected if inputs identify the group as  
3299 selected.  
3300 Selection of a nested feature causes its parent feature to be selected.

- 3301 See the *FeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.8].
- 3302 ▪ **id**: The group's *id* may be used to refer to the group when aggregating the SDD into another SDD.
- 3303 The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
- 3304 log and trace messages.
- 3305 ▪ **default**: Multiple default *Groups* MUST NOT be defined.

3306 **4.12.4 FeaturesType**



3307  
3308 **Figure 87: FeaturesType structure.**

3309 *FeaturesType* provides the type definition for the single, optional, *Features* element in *SelectableContent*.

3310 Features defined directly under the *Features* element in *SelectableContent* are the top level features. A

3311 *Features* element may also include a *MultiSelect* element that refers to features whose selections are

3312 interdependent.

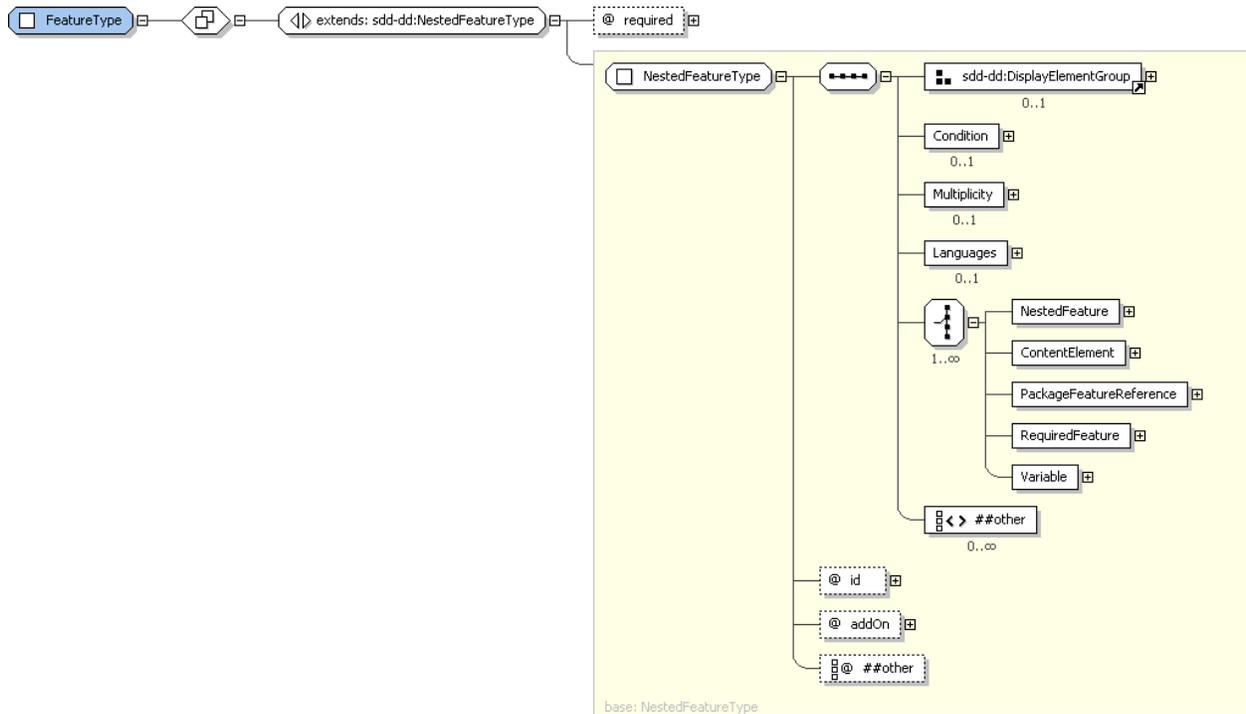
3313 **4.12.4.1 FeaturesType Property Summary**

| Name        | Type            | *    | Description  |
|-------------|-----------------|------|--|
| Feature     | FeatureType     | 1..* | A top level feature in the hierarchy of features defined in <i>SelectableContent</i> .   |
| MultiSelect | MultiSelectType | 0..* | A list of feature references whose selection is controlled as a multi-select list with defined minimum and maximum selections. |
|             | xsd:any         | 0..* |  |

3314 **4.12.4.2 FeaturesType Property Usage Notes**

- 3315 ▪ **Feature**: Each top level *Feature* can define *NestedFeatures*. All features can define required
- 3316 relationships with other features that cause the required feature to be selected.
- 3317 See the *FeatureType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.5].
- 3318 ▪ **MultiSelect**: The *MultiSelect* element MUST refer to *Feature* or *NestedFeature* elements.
- 3319 See the *MultiSelectType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.15].

3320 **4.12.5 FeatureType**



3321  
3322 **Figure 88: FeatureType structure.**

3323 *FeatureType* provides the type definition for each feature defined directly below *SelectableContent*. A  
3324 *Feature* can define *NestedFeatures* and identify *ContentElements* and other features that will be selected  
3325 when the feature is selected. A feature can also be defined to be available for selection only under certain  
3326 conditions.

3327 **4.12.5.1 FeatureType Property Summary**

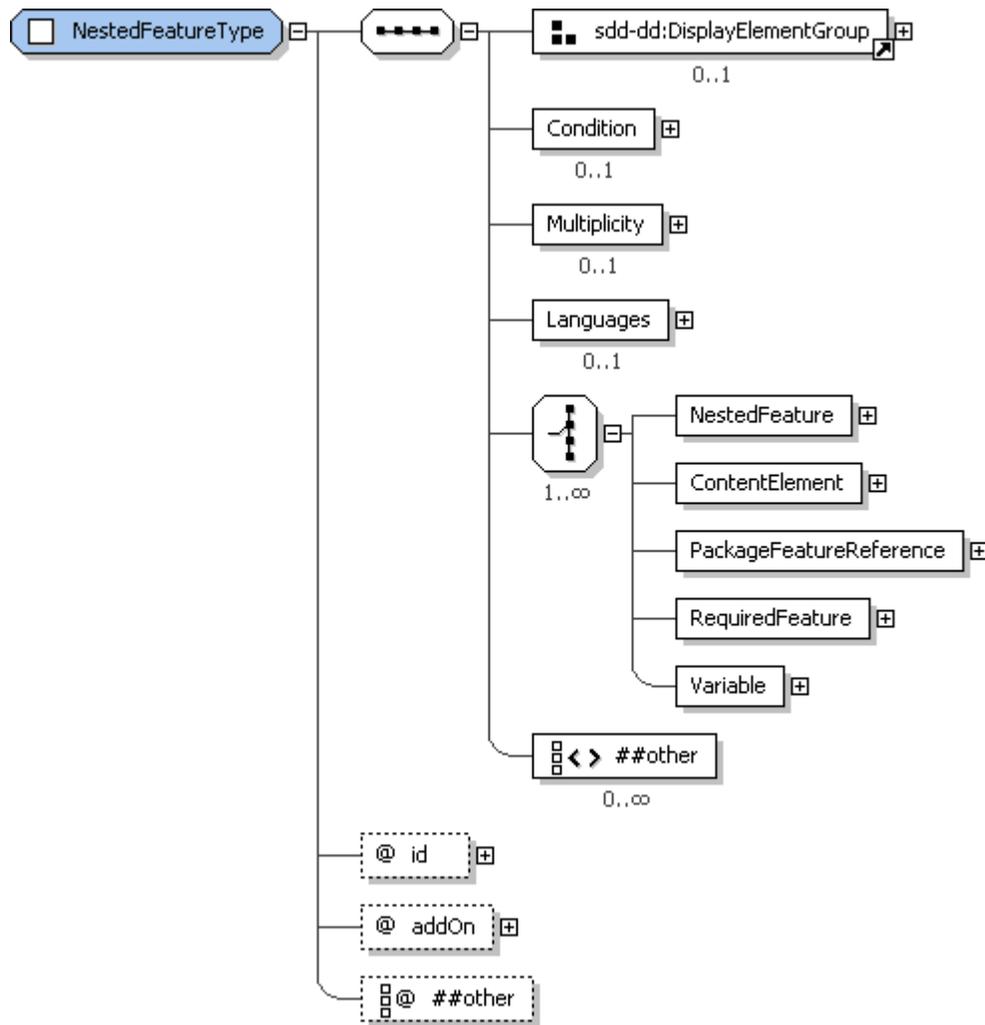
| Name     | Type                        | *    | Description   |
|----------|-----------------------------|------|---|
|          | [extends] NestedFeatureType |      | See the NestedFeatureType section for additional properties [4.12.6]. |
| required | xsd:boolean                 | 0..1 | Indicates the feature must be selected.<br>**default value="false"    |

3328 **4.12.5.2 FeatureType Property Usage Notes**

- 3329 See the *NestedFeatureType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.12.6].
- 3330 **required:** A top level *Feature* MUST be selected when the value of the *required* attribute is "true". In  
3331 this case, the user cannot choose to deselect this top level *Feature*.
- 3332 In *Features* that define *Multiplicity*, the SDD author can state a minimum number of instances of the  
3333 *Feature*. This minimum applies only if the *Feature* is selected. The *required* attribute can be used to  
3334 indicate that the *Feature* is always selected and so the minimum number of instances applies.
- 3335 The *required* attribute SHOULD be used only when *Multiplicity* is applied to the *Feature*.

3336

### 4.12.6 NestedFeatureType



3337

3338

**Figure 89: NestedFeatureType structure.**

3339

3340

3341

*NestedFeatureType* is identical to *FeatureType* except that *NestedFeatureType* does not define a *required* attribute. All features other than those defined directly below *SelectableContent* use the *NestedFeatureType*.

3342

#### 4.12.6.1 NestedFeatureType Property Summary

| Name             | Type             | *    | Description   |
|------------------|------------------|------|---|
| DisplayName      | DisplayTextType  | 0..1 | A human-readable name for the feature.  |
| Description      | DisplayTextType  | 0..1 | A human-readable description of the feature.  |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType  | 0..1 | A human-readable short description of the feature.  |
| Condition        | ConditionType    | 0..1 | A condition that determines if the feature is relevant to a particular deployment.                                    |
| Multiplicity     | MultiplicityType | 0..1 | Both an indication that multiple instances of the feature can be selected and the specification of their constraints. |

|                         |                             |      |   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|------|---|
| Languages               | LanguageSelectionsType      | 0..1 | A list of language support available for the feature's content.   |
| NestedFeature           | NestedFeatureType           | 0..* | A nested feature.   |
| ContentElement          | ContentElementReferenceType | 0..* | A reference to a content element to be deployed when the feature is selected.   |
| PackageFeatureReference | PackageFeatureReferenceType | 0..* | A reference to a feature to be selected in a ContainedPackage defined in either the BaseContent or SelectableContent hierarchies. |
| RequiredFeature         | FeatureReferenceType        | 0..* | A reference to a feature that is required when the defining feature is selected and so is selected automatically.                 |
| Variable                | DerivedVariableType         | 0..* | The definition of a variable that can be used anywhere in any variable expression in the SDD.                                     |
|                         | xsd:any                     | 0..* |   |
| id                      | xsd:ID                      | 1    | Used within the SDD to refer to the feature.  |
| addOn                   | xsd:boolean                 | 0..1 | A "true" value indicates that the feature can be added to a deployed instance of the solution.<br>**default value="false"         |
|                         | xsd:anyAttribute            | 0..* |   |

#### 3343 4.12.6.2 NestedFeatureType Property Usage Notes

- 3344   ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
3345   MUST provide a label for the nested feature.
- 3346   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 3347   ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
3348   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the nested feature.
- 3349   The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 3350   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 3351   ▪ **Condition:** If the features and its nested features are only applicable in certain environments, a  
3352   *Condition* can be defined. When the *Condition* is not met, the feature and its nested features are not  
3353   in scope.
- 3354       For example, some features may be available only on a Linux operating system, even though the  
3355       software can be applied on other operating systems. In this case, a *Condition* can be defined to  
3356       cause the feature to be ignored when the operating system is not Linux.
- 3357   See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- 3358   ▪ **Multiplicity:** When multiple instances of a feature can be selected, a *Multiplicity* element MUST be  
3359   defined.
- 3360       For example, a solution that includes a server and a client may allow the deployment of multiple  
3361       clients. In this situation, a feature that defines a *Multiplicity* element would select the content  
3362       elements that deploy the client software.
- 3363   See the *MultiplicityType* section for structure and usage details [4.12.7].
- 3364   ▪ **Languages:** Sometimes language support for a feature is different than that available for the overall  
3365   solution. This is especially likely when features are implemented by aggregation of packages

3366 provided by different teams. When language support differs, the *Languages* element of the feature  
3367 MUST be defined to state which languages are supported for the feature.

3368 When *Languages* is defined in a feature, it overrides the global declaration of supported languages  
3369 and MUST declare the complete set of language support available for that feature.

3370 If *Languages* is not defined, the global declaration of supported languages in *CompositeInstallable*  
3371 applies for the feature.

3372 See the *LanguageSelectionsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.4].

3373 ▪ **NestedFeature:** A *NestedFeature* must be explicitly selected. It is not assumed to be selected when  
3374 the parent feature is selected. Selection of a nested feature causes its parent feature to be selected,  
3375 but not vice-versa. The definition of a *NestedFeature* indicates that application of the *NestedFeature*  
3376 is dependent on application of the parent feature.

3377 ▪ **ContentElement:** The *ContentElement* referred to MUST be in the selectable content hierarchy  
3378 defined by the *SelectableContent* element.

3379 When the content reference is to a *CompositeUnit*, the composite and all content elements below it in  
3380 the content hierarchy are considered to be in scope when the feature is selected. Ease of referencing  
3381 a group of content from a feature can be one reason for using a composite in the content hierarchy.

3382 See the *ContentElementReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.9].

3383 ▪ **PackageFeatureReference:** Selection of a feature may result in selection of an aggregated  
3384 package's feature identified by a *ContainedPackage* element anywhere in the *BaseContent* or  
3385 *SelectableContent* hierarchies. A *PackageFeatureReference* identifies both the *ContainedPackage*  
3386 and the applicable features to be selected in that package.

3387 See the *PackageFeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.10].

3388 ▪ **RequiredFeature:** When the selection of one feature requires the selection of another feature, the  
3389 *RequiredFeature* can be used to specify this requirement.

3390 When two features identify each other as required features, they are always selected together.

3391 The selection of the defining feature MUST cause the required feature to be selected.

3392 See the *FeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.8].

3393 ▪ **Variable:** *Variables* defined in features are useful when inputs to an artifact need to vary based on  
3394 which features are selected for a particular deployment. Artifact arguments can be defined in terms of  
3395 feature *Variables* to allow for this variation. When an artifact deploys selectable content, inputs to the  
3396 artifact that indicate the selections for a particular deployment can be associated with feature  
3397 selection in the SDD via feature *Variables*.

3398 For example, a *Feature* that deploys a trace facility might define a *Variable* called  
3399 "TraceSettings". The value of an argument to a base content artifact might define its value as  
3400 "\$({TraceSettings})". If the feature is selected, this argument would be used and its value would be  
3401 taken from the feature *Variable*. If the feature is not selected, the argument would be ignored.

3402 A *Variable* defined in a feature differs from *Variable* elements defined in content elements in one  
3403 important way. A reference to an undefined feature *Variable* is treated as an empty string and is  
3404 considered to be defined.

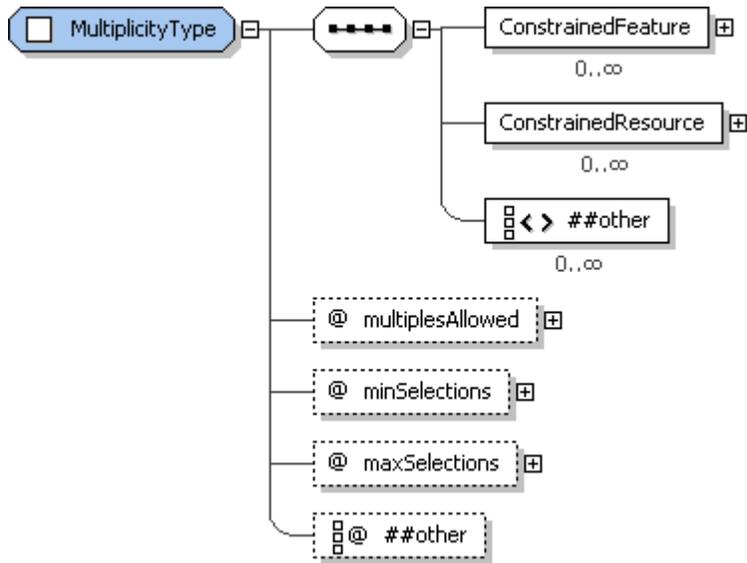
3405 See the *DerivedVariableType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.13].

3406 ▪ **id:** Provides the means to reference a feature from other features.

3407 The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
3408 log and trace messages.

3409 ▪ **addOn:** When a solution and the artifacts that deploy the various parts of the solution are designed in  
3410 a way that supports the addition of a particular feature at a later time (after the deployment of the  
3411 base solution), the *addOn* attribute is set to "true".

3412 **4.12.7 MultiplicityType**



3413  
3414 **Figure 90: MultiplicityType structure.**

3415 Some solutions allow multiple instances of some portion of the solution’s resources to be deployed as  
3416 part of the solution.

3417 For example, a solution that includes a server and a client may allow the deployment of multiple  
3418 clients. The deployment of each client may involve content elements that represent several different  
3419 resulting resources, features that control optional functionality of the client and configuration elements  
3420 that configure the client. All of these can be defined within a “Client” feature that declares a *Multiplicity*  
3421 element that indicates that multiple clients are allowed. Each selection or “instance” of the feature  
3422 results in the deployment of a client.

3423 The phrase “feature instance” is used to refer to the set of instances of all resources deployed when the  
3424 feature is selected. It does not imply that features themselves are represented as having lifecycle or that  
3425 features in the SDD correspond with feature instances in the deployment environment.

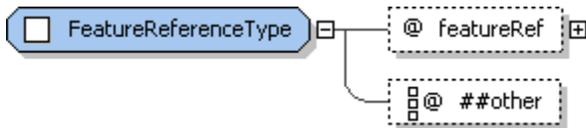
3426 **4.12.7.1 MultiplicityType Property Summary**

| Name                | Type                    | *    | Description  |
|---------------------|-------------------------|------|--|
| ConstrainedFeature  | FeatureReferenceType    | 0..* | A nested feature whose selection must be the same for all instances of the defining feature in a particular deployment.        |
| ConstrainedResource | ConstrainedResourceType | 0..* | A resource that must resolve to the same resource instance for all instances of the feature in a particular deployment.        |
|                     | xsd:any                 | 0..* |  |
| multiplesAllowed    | xsd:boolean             | 1    | Indicates that multiple instances of the feature are allowed.<br>**fixed value="true"  |
| minSelections       | xsd:positiveInteger     | 0..1 | The minimum number of instances of the feature that must be selected if the feature is selected at all.<br>**default value="1" |
| maxSelections       | xsd:positiveInteger     | 0..1 | That maximum number of instances of the feature that can be selected.  |
|                     | xsd:anyAttribute        | 0..* |  |

3427 **4.12.7.2 MultiplicityType Property Usage Notes**

- 3428 ▪ **ConstrainedFeature:** A feature with multiplicity may contain *NestedFeature* elements. When a  
3429 *NestedFeature* is identified in a *ConstrainedFeature*, then all instances of the defining *Feature* MUST  
3430 make the same selection choice for that *NestedFeature*.
- 3431 See the *FeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.8].
- 3432 ▪ **ConstrainedResource:** The content elements selected by a feature may express constraints on  
3433 resources. When the resource constraints for each instance of a feature must resolve to the same  
3434 resource instance, or when all must resolve to unique resource instances, the resource is referred to  
3435 and the constraint type is identified in the *ConstrainedResource* element.
- 3436 See the *ConstrainedResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.11].
- 3437 ▪ **multiplesAllowed:** This is an attribute with a fixed value of “true”. It is included because all other  
3438 elements and attributes of *MultiplicityType* are optional. A feature that allows multiples but has no  
3439 need to define constraints on resources, features or number of instances would define a *Multiplicity*  
3440 element that had only the *multiplesAllowed* attribute.
- 3441 ▪ **minSelections:** When a feature is selected, if more than one instance of the feature is required,  
3442 *minSelections* MUST be specified.
- 3443 ▪ **maxSelections:** When a feature is selected, if there is a limit on the number of instances of the  
3444 feature that can be selected, *maxSelections* MUST be specified. If *maxSelections* is defined, it MUST  
3445 be equal to or greater than *minSelections*.

3446 **4.12.8 FeatureReferenceType**



3447 **Figure 91: FeatureReferenceType structure.**

3448 *FeatureReferenceType* provides a way to reference a feature defined in the SDD from within the SDD.

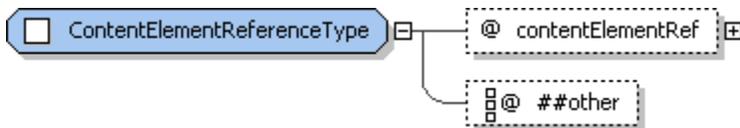
3450 **4.12.8.1 FeatureReferenceType Property Summary**

| Name       | Type             | *    | Description  |
|------------|------------------|------|--|
| featureRef | xsd:IDREF        | 1    | Reference to a feature defined in the deployment descriptor. |
|            | xsd:anyAttribute | 0..* |  |

3451 **4.12.8.2 FeatureReferenceType Property Usage Notes**

- 3452 ▪ **featureRef:** The value MUST reference the *id* of a feature in the deployment descriptor.

3453 **4.12.9 ContentElementReferenceType**



3454 **Figure 92: ContentElementReferenceType structure.**

3455 *ContentElementReferenceType* provides a way to reference a content element defined in the SDD from  
3456 within a feature.

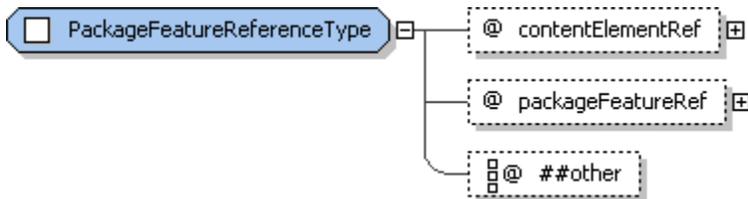
3458 **4.12.9.1 ContentElementReferenceType Property Summary**

| Name              | Type             | *    | Description   |
|-------------------|------------------|------|---|
| contentElementRef | xsd:IDREF        | 1    | Reference to a content element in the deployment descriptor's selectable content. |
|                   | xsd:anyAttribute | 0..* |   |

3459 **4.12.9.2 ContentElementReferenceType Property Usage Notes**

- 3460 **contentElementRef:** The value MUST reference the *id* of a content element in the deployment  
 3461 descriptor.

3462 **4.12.10 PackageFeatureReferenceType**



3463  
 3464 **Figure 93: PackageFeatureReferenceType structure.**

3465 *PackageFeatureReferenceType* provides a way to reference a feature defined in a referenced SDD. It  
 3466 identifies the *ContainedPackage* element that references the SDD and the feature in the referenced SDD.

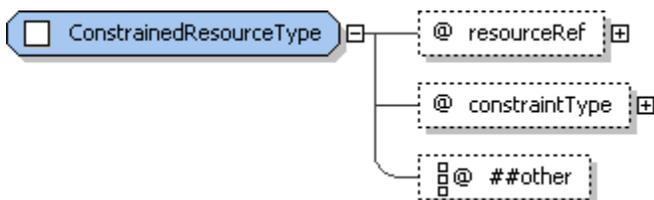
3467 **4.12.10.1 PackageFeatureReferenceType Property Summary**

| Name              | Type             | *    | Description  |
|-------------------|------------------|------|--|
| contentElementRef | xsd:IDREF        | 1    | Reference to a content element in the deployment descriptor.                   |
| packageFeatureRef | xsd:NCName       | 1    | The feature's id as defined in the referenced package's deployment descriptor. |
|                   | xsd:anyAttribute | 0..* |  |

3468 **4.12.10.2 PackageFeatureReferenceType Property Usage Notes**

- 3469 **contentElementRef:** This value MUST reference the *id* of a *ContainedPackage* element in  
 3470 *SelectableContent* or *BaseContent*. This reference does not cause the *ContainedPackage* to be in  
 3471 scope.
- 3472 **packageFeatureRef:** Specifies the value of the *id* of a feature element from the SDD of the  
 3473 *ContainedPackage* identified in *contentElementRef*. This feature reference is ignored when the  
 3474 *ContainedPackage* identified in *contentElementRef* is not in scope for a particular deployment.

3475 **4.12.11 ConstrainedResourceType**



3476  
 3477 **Figure 94: ConstrainedResourceType structure.**

3478 A resource may be required during deployment of the content selected by a *Feature* instance. The  
 3479 requirement may exist because the resource is used in a *Requirement* statement, referred to in a *Variable*  
 3480 whose value is in scope for the particular deployment or referred to in a constraint in a *Condition* that is  
 3481 satisfied for the particular deployment. This is an in-scope, required resource for the particular  
 3482 deployment. The SDD author may wish to constrain in-scope, required resources to resolve to the same  
 3483 resource instance for all *Feature* instances or to resolve to unique resource instances for each *Feature*  
 3484 instance. This is done using a *ConstrainedResource* element.

3485 **4.12.11.1 ConstrainedResourceType Property Summary**

| Name           | Type                       | *    | Description   |
|----------------|----------------------------|------|---|
| resourceRef    | xsd:IDREF                  | 1    | A reference to the constrained resource.  |
| constraintType | MultiplicityConstraintType | 0..1 | Indicates whether the constraint requires every instance of the resource to be the same or requires every instance to be different.<br>**default value="same" |
|                | xsd:anyAttribute           | 0..* |   |

3486 **4.12.11.2 ConstrainedResourceType Property Usage Notes**

- 3487 ▪ **resourceRef:** The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.
  - 3488 ▪ **constraintType:** If there is a constraint, *constraintType* indicates that all resource instances be  
 3489 unique or that all resource instances be the same.  
 3490 For example, all clients for a particular solution may need to connect to the same database. In  
 3491 this case, *constraintType* would be set to *same*. In other cases, each of the deployed resources  
 3492 might need to use its own unique instance of a required resource. If there could be only one client  
 3493 per operating system, a constraint on the operating system resource would set *constraintType* to  
 3494 *unique*.
- 3495 See the *MultiplicityConstraintType* section for the enumeration values for *constraintType* [4.12.12].

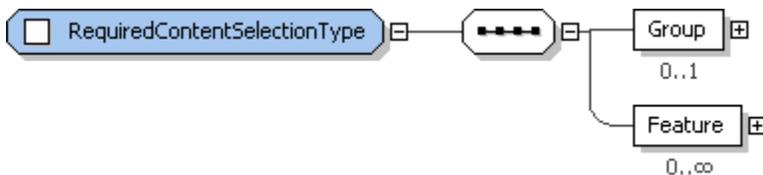
3496 **4.12.12 MultiplicityConstraintType**

3497 This is a simple type that is used to indicate how resources declared in the *Multiplicity* element should be  
 3498 treated. Enumeration values are *same*, *unique*, or if a value is not specified, the SDD author is indicating  
 3499 that it doesn't matter.

3500 **4.12.12.1 MultiplicityConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 3501 ▪ **same:** The value *same* is used to indicate that the constraint requires all resource instances MUST  
 3502 be the same.
- 3503 ▪ **unique:** The value *unique* is used to indicate that each resource instance MUST be unique.

3504 **4.12.13 RequiredContentSelectionType**



3505 **Figure 95: RequiredContentSelectionType structure.**

3507 When one SDD aggregates another, there needs to be an indication of which *Groups* and/or *Features* in  
 3508 the aggregated SDD should be selected. The *RequiredContentSelection* of the referenced package  
 3509 element identifies which elements MUST be selected when the defining package is selected.

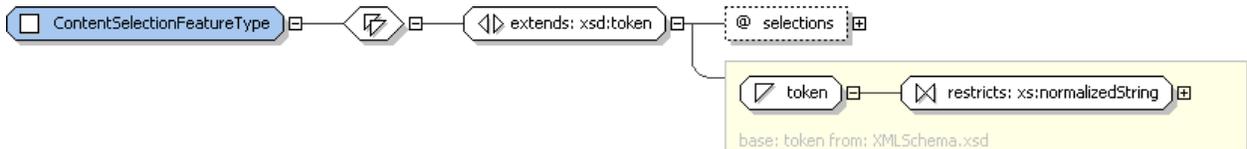
3510 **4.12.13.1 RequiredContentSelectionType Property Summary**

| Name    | Type                        | *    | Description                              |
|---------|-----------------------------|------|--|
| Group   | xsd:token                   | 0..1 | A reference to the group to be selected. |
| Feature | ContentSelectionFeatureType | 0..* | A reference to a feature to be selected. |

3511 **4.12.13.2 RequiredContentSelectionType Property Usage Notes**

- 3512 ▪ **Group:** The *Group* value is the identifier of a *Group* in the aggregated SDD. This value MUST  
 3513 reference the *id* of a *Group* element in the deployment descriptor denoted by the referenced package.
- 3514 ▪ **Feature:** The *Feature* element value is the identifier of the feature in the aggregated SDD. Attributes  
 3515 indicating the number of selections to be made can be included. The feature value MUST be the *id* of  
 3516 a feature element in the deployment descriptor denoted by the referenced package.
- 3517 If *Group* is also defined, *Feature* SHOULD be a feature that is not selected by the *Group*.
- 3518 See the *ContentSelectionFeatureType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.14].

3519 **4.12.14 ContentSelectionFeatureType**



3520 **Figure 96: ContentSelectionFeatureType structure.**

3521 The *ContentSelectionFeatureType* allows for the definition of the number of times a feature can be  
 3522 referenced if that feature includes a *Multiplicity* element.

3523 For example, a software package has a server and client; the server can be deployed only on one  
 3524 machine, but the client can be deployed on multiple machines and configured to reference the one  
 3525 server. The server, for performance reasons, is limited to 10 client connections. To limit the number of  
 3526 times the client can be deployed, the *selections* attribute should be set to “10”.  
 3527

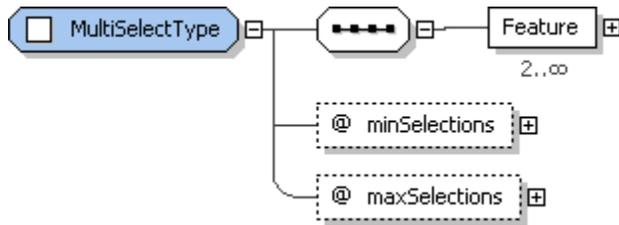
3528 **4.12.14.1 ContentSelectionFeatureType Property Summary**

| Name       | Type                   | *    | Description  |
|------------|------------------------|------|--|
|            | [extends] xsd:token    |      | See the xsd:token definition in [XSD].   |
| selections | VariableExpressionType | 0..1 | The number of times a feature with <i>Multiplicity</i> in the referenced package should be deployed. |

3529 **4.12.14.2 ContentSelectionFeatureType Property Usage Notes**

- 3530 See the `xsd:token` definition in [XSD] for inherited attributes and elements.
- 3531 ▪ **selections:** The value of *selections* MUST be, or resolve to, a positive integer that is within the  
 3532 bounds of the *minSelections* and *maxSelections* attributes defined in the *Multiplicity* element of the  
 3533 referenced feature.
- 3534 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

3535 **4.12.15 MultiSelectType**



3536  
3537 **Figure 97: MultiSelectType structure.**

3538 *MultiSelectType* defines a way to associate features with a defined minimum and maximum number of  
3539 selections allowed. A *MultiSelect* element MAY be used to support identification of mutually exclusive  
3540 features.

3541 **4.12.15.1 MultiSelectType Property Summary**

| Name          | Type                   | *    | Description  |
|---------------|------------------------|------|--|
| Feature       | FeatureReferenceType   | 2..* | A reference to a feature in the list of features defined in the MultiSelect element. |
| minSelections | xsd:nonNegativeInteger | 0..1 | Minimum number of features that must be selected.<br>**default value="0"             |
| maxSelections | xsd:positiveInteger    | 0..1 | Maximum number of features that can be selected.                                     |

3542 **4.12.15.2 MultiSelectType Property Usage Notes**

- 3543 ▪ **Feature:** The value MUST reference the *id* of a feature element.  
3544 See the *FeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.8].
- 3545 ▪ **minSelections, maxSelections:** When it is not necessary that any of the features in the *MultiSelect*  
3546 list be selected, the default of "0" can be used.  
3547 Mutually exclusive features can be defined using a *MultiSelect* element with two features,  
3548 *minSelections* set to "0" and *maxSelections* set to "1".  
3549 If multiple instances of a single feature are selected via multiplicity, the set of multiple instances count  
3550 only once toward the minimum and maximum. In other words, the count is based solely on the  
3551 features selected, not on how many instances of each feature are selected.  
3552 When *maxSelections* is not defined, all of the features in the *MultiSelect* MAY be selected for a  
3553 particular deployment.  
3554 If defined, the *maxSelections* value MUST be greater than or equal to the *minSelections* value and  
3555 MUST be less than or equal to the number of referenced features.

3556 **4.13 Localization**

3557 Localization refers to enabling a particular piece of software to support one or more languages. Anything  
3558 that needs to be deployed to provide support for a particular language in that software is considered  
3559 localization content. Translated materials are a primary, but not the only, example of localization content.

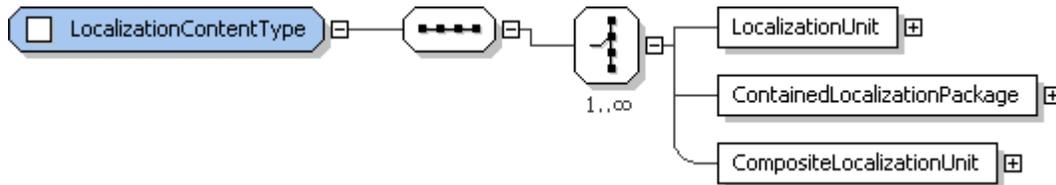
3560 Localization content is similar in many ways to other content, but there are important differences in how  
3561 localization content is selected for deployment that lead to the need for a separate content hierarchy and  
3562 separate types. Two criteria determine whether or not localization content is in scope for a particular  
3563 deployment:

- 3564 ▪ The first criterion has to do with the language or languages supported by the localization content. At  
3565 least one of the languages must be in scope for the content to be selected.

3566     ▪ The second criterion has to do with the availability of the resources to be localized—the localization  
 3567     base. The localization base may be a resource deployed by base or selectable content, or it may be a  
 3568     resource previously deployed and found in the deployment environment.

3569     The types described in this section support definition of metadata describing the criteria for determining  
 3570     when localization content is in scope.

3571     **4.13.1 LocalizationContentType**



3572     **Figure 98: LocalizationContentType structure.**

3574     The *LocalizationContent* tree contains all content created specifically to provide localization by deploying  
 3575     language-specific materials for a particular location. The localization support provided can be for content  
 3576     defined in the SDD or it can be for resources in the deployment environment that are not created or  
 3577     modified by deployment of the SDD. Each element defined in the *LocalizationContent* hierarchy is in  
 3578     scope for a particular deployment when it supports a language that is in scope for that deployment and  
 3579     when its localization base, if any, is available.

3580     **4.13.1.1 LocalizationContentType Property Summary**

| Name                         | Type                          | *    | Description  |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|------|--|
| LocalizationUnit             | LocalizationUnitType          | 0..* | Contains artifacts that create, modify or delete language support.   |
| ContainedLocalizationPackage | ReferencedPackageType         | 0..* | Identifies an SDD whose contents are aggregated to create, modify or delete language support.                      |
| CompositeLocalizationUnit    | CompositeLocalizationUnitType | 0..* | An organizational element that groups localization content and defines metadata common to all the grouped content. |

3581     **4.13.1.2 LocalizationContentType Property Usage Notes**

3582     ▪ **LocalizationUnit:** When there is no need to group a *LocalizationUnit* with other units that have  
 3583     common metadata, the *LocalizationUnit* is defined at the top level of the hierarchy. A *LocalizationUnit*  
 3584     defined at the top level of the *LocalizationContent* hierarchy is in scope for a particular deployment  
 3585     when its *Condition* and *LocalizationBase*, if any, evaluate to true and its *Languages* element, if any,  
 3586     defines a language that is in scope for the deployment.

3587     See the *LocalizationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.2].

3588     ▪ **ContainedLocalizationPackage:** *ContainedLocalizationPackage* definitions include a list of  
 3589     languages supported by the contained package. The package need not be processed if none of those  
 3590     languages is in scope for a particular deployment.

3591     See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.1].

3592     ▪ **CompositeLocalizationUnit:** *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is a construct that allows organization of  
 3593     localization content in a way that is meaningful to the SDD author.

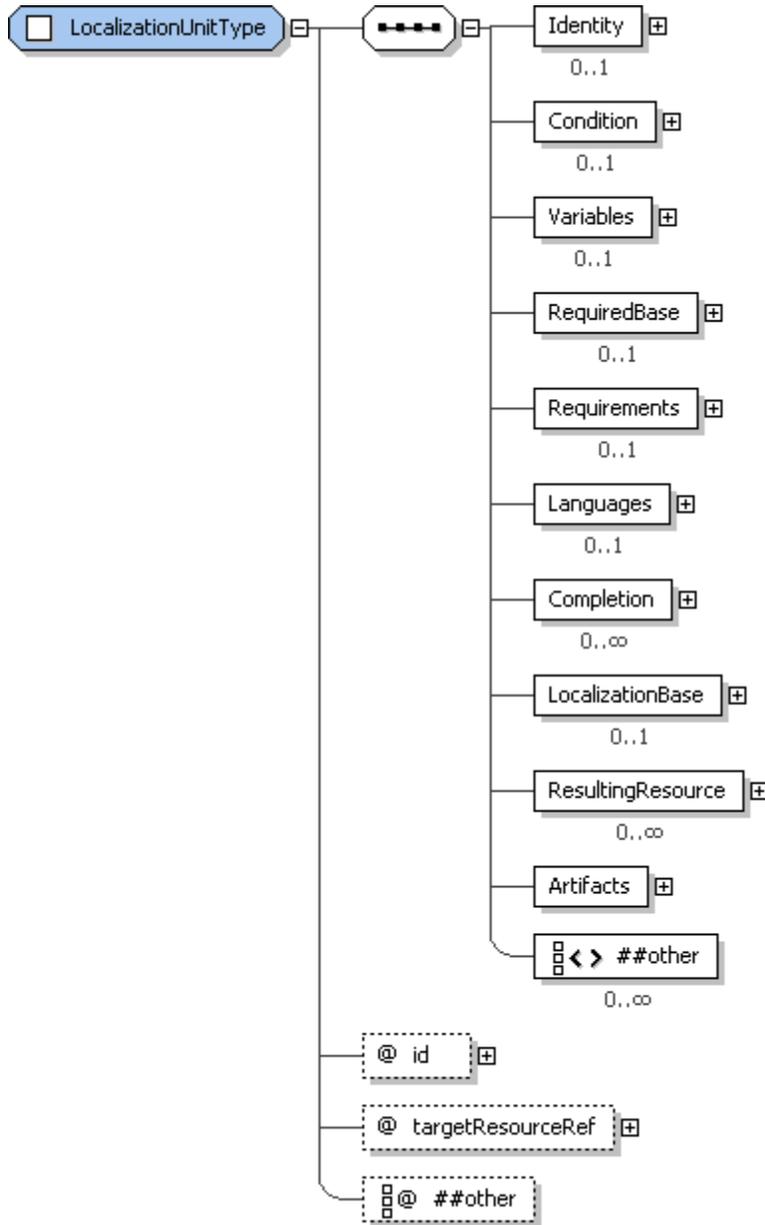
3594     One example use of a *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is to group a set of *LocalizationUnits* that  
 3595     provide support for a variety of languages for the same resource. This eliminates the need to  
 3596     define identical *LocalizationBase* elements in every *LocalizationUnit*. It can be defined once in the  
 3597     *CompositeLocalizationUnit*.

3598 If evaluation of the *CompositeLocalizationUnit's Condition, Languages and LocalizationBase*  
 3599 determines that it is not selected for deployment, none of the content elements defined below it in the  
 3600 hierarchy are selected.

3601 *Requirements, Variables, Conditions and Completion* elements common to all child content elements  
 3602 MAY be defined once in the *CompositeLocalizationUnit* rather than once in each nested element.

3603 See the *CompositeLocalizationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.3].

3604 **4.13.2 LocalizationUnitType**



3605  
 3606 **Figure 99: LocalizationUnitType structure.**

3607 The *LocalizationUnit* element defines artifacts that deploy localization content for one group of resources  
 3608 whose translations are packaged together. Localization content consists of materials that have been  
 3609 translated into one or more languages.

### 4.13.2.1 LocalizationUnitType Property Summary

| Name              | Type                      | *    | Description   |
|-------------------|---------------------------|------|---|
| Identity          | IdentityType              | 0..1 | Human-understandable identity information about the LocalizationUnit.   |
| Condition         | ConditionType             | 0..1 | A condition that determines if the content element is relevant to a particular deployment.                            |
| Variables         | VariablesType             | 0..1 | Variables that can be referenced in the LocalizationUnit's requirement and artifact definitions.                      |
| RequiredBase      | RequiredBaseType          | 0..1 | A resource that will be updated when the LocalizationUnit's UpdateArtifact is processed.                              |
| Requirements      | RequirementsType          | 0..1 | Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of the LocalizationUnit's artifacts.                     |
| Languages         | LanguagesType             | 0..1 | The LocalizationUnit's artifacts contain materials translated into these languages.                                   |
| Completion        | CompletionType            | 0..* | Describes completion actions such as restart and the conditions under which the action is applied.                    |
| LocalizationBase  | RequiredBaseType          | 0..1 | A resource whose translatable characteristics will be localized by processing the LocalizationUnit's InstallArtifact. |
| ResultingResource | ResultingResourceType     | 0..* | A resource that will be installed or updated by processing the LocalizationUnit's artifacts.                          |
| Artifacts         | InstallationArtifactsType | 1    | The set of artifacts associated with the LocalizationUnit.  |
|                   | xsd:any                   | 0..* |   |
| id                | xsd:ID                    | 1    | An identifier for the LocalizationUnit scoped to the deployment descriptor.   |
| targetResourceRef | xsd:IDREF                 | 1    | Reference to the resource that can process the LocalizationUnit's artifacts.  |
|                   | xsd:anyAttribute          | 0..* |   |

### 4.13.2.2 LocalizationUnitType Property Usage Notes

3612 ■ **Identity:** The *Identity* element defines human-understandable information that reflects the identity of  
 3613 the provided localization resources as understood by the end user of the solution. *Identity* has  
 3614 elements that are common with elements in the corresponding *PackageDescriptor's PackageIdentity*  
 3615 element, for example, *Name* and *Version*. The values of these common elements SHOULD be the  
 3616 same as the corresponding *PackageIdentity* element values.

3617 See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].

3618 ■ **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the *LocalizationUnit's* content should be deployed only when  
 3619 certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.

3620 For example, for a package that has one artifact that should be processed when the operating  
 3621 system is Linux and another artifact that should be processed when the operating system is  
 3622 Windows, the *LocalizationUnit* defining metadata for the Linux artifact would have a condition on  
 3623 the operating system being Linux. The *LocalizationUnit* defining metadata for the Windows  
 3624 artifact would have a condition on the operating system being Windows.

3625 *Conditions* should not be used to identify the resource that will be localized by the *LocalizationUnit*.  
3626 The *LocalizationBase* element is used for that purpose. A *LocalizationUnit* can have both a *Condition*  
3627 and a *LocalizationBase*.

3628 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

3629 ▪ **Variables:** A *Variables* element defines variables that can be used in the definition of requirements  
3630 and artifact parameters.

3631 When the deployment descriptor defines a single *LocalizationUnit* at the top level, that is, not inside a  
3632 *CompositeInstallable*, the variables it defines can also be referred to in any element under *Topology*.  
3633 See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.3].

3634 ▪ **RequiredBase:** *RequiredBase* identifies the resource that must exist prior to applying the  
3635 *LocalizationUnit*'s update artifact.  
3636 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].

3637 ▪ **Requirements:** *Requirements* MUST be met prior to processing the *LocalizationUnit*'s artifacts.  
3638 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].

3639 ▪ **Languages:** *Languages* lists the languages of the translated material deployed by the  
3640 *LocalizationUnit*.  
3641 See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].

3642 ▪ **Completion:** A *Completion* element MUST be included if the artifact being processed requires a  
3643 system operation such as a reboot or logoff to occur to function successfully after deployment or if the  
3644 artifact executes a system operation to complete deployment of the contents of the artifact.  
3645 There MUST be an artifact associated with the operation defined by a *Completion* element.  
3646 For example, if there is a *Completion* element for the *install* operation, the *LocalizationUnit* must  
3647 define an *InstallArtifact*.  
3648 See the *CompletionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.14].

3649 ▪ **LocalizationBase:** *LocalizationBase* identifies the resource or resources that can be localized by  
3650 processing the *LocalizationUnit*. A resource that satisfies the constraints defined in the  
3651 *LocalizationBase* is one that can be localized by applying the *LocalizationUnit*.  
3652 If no resource is found that meets the constraints defined in *LocalizationBase* during a particular  
3653 deployment, then the *LocalizationUnit* is not considered to be in scope for that deployment. This does  
3654 not represent an error.  
3655 Translations created or modified by the *LocalizationUnit* are for human-readable text included with the  
3656 *LocalizationBase* resources.  
3657 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].

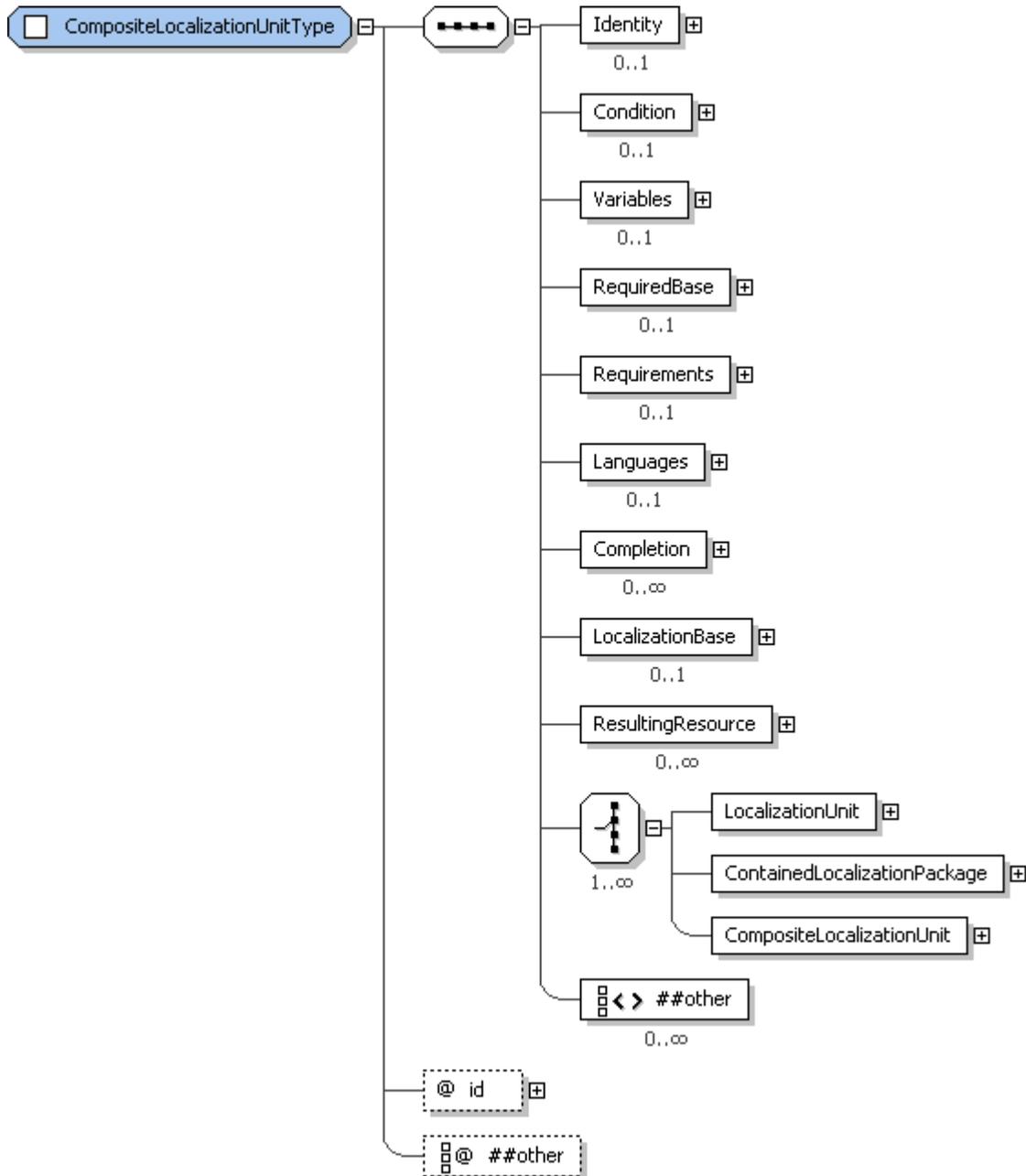
3658 ▪ **ResultingResource:** The *ResultingResources* for a *LocalizationUnit* MUST NOT identify resources  
3659 other than localization resources.  
3660 See the *ResultingResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.1].

3661 ▪ **Artifacts:** When the *LocalizationUnit* is a singleton defined outside of a *CompositeInstallable*, it  
3662 MUST define at least one artifact element and MAY define one of each type of artifact element  
3663 allowed for its type. The inclusion of an artifact element in a singleton *LocalizationUnit* implies support  
3664 for the associated operation.  
3665 When the *LocalizationUnit* is defined within a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST define exactly one  
3666 artifact. The artifact defined MAY be any artifact allowed in a *LocalizationUnit* and it MUST support  
3667 the single top level *operation* defined by the *CompositeInstallable*. This does not mean the operation  
3668 associated with the artifact has to be the same as the one defined by the *CompositeInstallable*.  
3669 For example, an install of a localization resource may be required during the update of the overall  
3670 solution, in which case the *LocalizationUnit* would define an *InstallArtifact* to support the top level  
3671 update operation.

3672 See the *InstallationArtifactsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.4].

- 3673 ▪ **id**: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
3674 log and trace messages.
- 3675 ▪ **targetResourceRef**: The *targetResourceRef* attribute MUST reference the *id* of a resource element  
3676 in *Topology* that will process the *LocalizationUnit*'s artifacts to create or modify the localization  
3677 resources identified in the *LocalizationUnit*'s *ResultingResource* elements.

3678 **4.13.3 CompositeLocalizationUnitType**



3679  
3680 **Figure 100: CompositeLocalizationUnitType structure**

3681 *CompositeLocalizationUnitType* provides the type definition for all *CompositeLocalizationUnit* elements in  
3682 the *LocalizationContent* hierarchy. *CompositeLocalizationUnit* elements define nested localization content  
3683 elements and metadata that applies to all of the nested elements.

### 4.13.3.1 CompositeLocalizationUnitType Property Summary

| Name                         | Type                          | *    | Description  |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|------|--|
| Identity                     | IdentityType                  | 0..1 | Human-understandable identity information about the CompositeLocalizationUnit.                                     |
| Condition                    | ConditionType                 | 0..1 | A condition that determines if the CompositeLocalizationUnit is relevant to a particular deployment.               |
| Variables                    | VariablesType                 | 0..1 | Variables for use within the CompositeLocalizationUnit and content elements nested beneath it in the hierarchy.    |
| RequiredBase                 | RequiredBaseType              | 0..1 | A resource that will be updated when the nested elements are processed.  |
| Requirements                 | RequirementsType              | 0..1 | Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of the nested content elements.                       |
| Languages                    | LanguagesType                 | 0..1 | Localization elements defined within CompositeLocalizationUnit contain materials translated into these languages.  |
| Completion                   | CompletionType                | 0..* | Describes completion actions such as restart and the conditions under which the action is applied.                 |
| LocalizationBase             | RequiredBaseType              | 0..1 | A resource whose translatable characteristics will be localized by processing the nested content elements.         |
| ResultingResource            | ResultingResourceType         | 0..* | A localization resource that will be installed or updated by processing the nested content elements.               |
| LocalizationUnit             | LocalizationUnitType          | 0..* | Contains artifacts that will create, modify or delete language support.  |
| ContainedLocalizationPackage | ReferencedPackageType         | 0..* | Identifies an SDD whose contents are aggregated to create, modify or delete language support.                      |
| CompositeLocalizationUnit    | CompositeLocalizationUnitType | 0..* | An organizational element that groups localization content and defines metadata common to all the grouped content. |
|                              | xsd:any                       | 0..* |  |
| id                           | xsd:ID                        | 1    | An identifier for the CompositeLocalizationUnit that is unique within the deployment descriptor.                   |
|                              | xsd:anyAttribute              | 0..* |  |

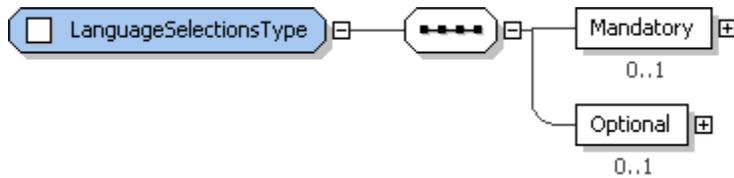
### 4.13.3.2 CompositeLocalizationUnitType Property Usage Notes

- **Identity:** The *CompositeLocalizationUnit*, like all content elements, is a unit of packaging. Its identity is the identity of a unit of packaging and may be useful to package management tools. The identity MAY be similar or identical to the identity of the *ResultingResource(s)*.

- 3689 See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
- 3690 ▪ **Condition:** If the composite and the elements nested beneath it are applicable only in certain  
3691 environments, a *Condition* can be defined. When the *Condition* is not met, the composite and its  
3692 nested elements are not in scope.
- 3693 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- 3694 ▪ **Variables:** *Variables* used by more than one nested element can be defined in the  
3695 *CompositeLocalizationUnit* for efficiency both in composing and processing the SDD. *Variables* are  
3696 visible to all nested content elements.
- 3697 See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.3].
- 3698 ▪ **RequiredBase:** If the processing of all the update artifacts in the nested content elements results in a  
3699 single resource being updated, that resource can be defined in the *CompositeLocalizationUnit*'s  
3700 *RequiredBase* element.
- 3701 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].
- 3702 ▪ **Requirements:** When a *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is in scope for a particular deployment—as  
3703 determined by evaluation of its *LocalizationBase* and *Languages* properties—then its requirements  
3704 MUST be met.
- 3705 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
- 3706 ▪ **Languages:** The *Languages* element in the *CompositeLocalizationUnit* MUST NOT be defined or  
3707 MUST define the union of all languages supported by the nested content elements. For nested  
3708 content elements to be evaluated to determine if they are in scope, the *CompositeLocalizationUnit*  
3709 must be in scope. When *Languages* is present in the *CompositeLocalizationUnit*, it must define one of  
3710 the languages in scope for the particular deployment if any of the nested elements are to be  
3711 evaluated. If *Languages* is not present in a *CompositeLocalizationUnit*, evaluation of all the child  
3712 elements still is required, as long as the other elements of *CompositeLocalizationUnit* have evaluated  
3713 to true. When the *Languages* and/or the *LocalizationBase* element in a *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is  
3714 not defined, the nested content elements must be evaluated to determine if they are in scope.
- 3715 See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].
- 3716 ▪ **Completion:** When a particular completion action applies to all nested elements and should be  
3717 performed only once for the entire group, it can be defined in the *CompositeLocalizationUnit* rather  
3718 than in each individual element.
- 3719 See the *CompletionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.14].
- 3720 ▪ **LocalizationBase:** A *LocalizationBase* element evaluates to true when the resource identified in the  
3721 base is created by a content element that is in scope for the deployment or it already exists in the  
3722 deployment environment.
- 3723 When the *LocalizationBase* is defined it must evaluate to true for any of the nested content elements  
3724 to be evaluated. If it evaluates to false, none of the nested content elements are in scope. If it  
3725 evaluates to true, the nested content elements may be in scope.
- 3726 When the *LocalizationBase* and/or the *Languages* element in a *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is not  
3727 defined, the nested content elements must be evaluated to determine if they are in scope.
- 3728 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].
- 3729 ▪ **ResultingResource:** If there are one or more resources that will be created when the nested content  
3730 elements are processed, they can be defined here.
- 3731 See the *ResultingResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.1].
- 3732 ▪ **LocalizationUnit:** *LocalizationUnits* defined within the composite typically have common metadata.  
3733 Metadata defined in the composite does not need to be repeated in the nested element. Definitions in  
3734 the nested *LocalizationUnit* are additions to those defined in the composite.
- 3735 See the *LocalizationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.2].
- 3736 ▪ **ContainedLocalizationPackage:** A *ContainedLocalizationPackage* is defined in a  
3737 *CompositeLocalizationUnit* for the same reasons that a *LocalizationUnit* is—because it has metadata  
3738 in common with other elements defined in the composite.

- 3739 See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.1].
- 3740 ▪ **CompositeLocalizationUnit:** A *CompositeLocalizationUnit* can be nested inside another
- 3741 *CompositeLocalizationUnit* when some of the metadata is shared only by a subset of the elements
- 3742 nested in the higher level composite.
- 3743 For example, the higher level composite might contain operating system requirements that apply
- 3744 to all localization content and nested composites might group localization content by localization
- 3745 base.
- 3746 ▪ **id:** This *id* is not referred to by any other element in the deployment descriptor.
- 3747 The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
- 3748 log and trace messages. It also may be useful for associating custom discovery logic with the
- 3749 *CompositeLocalizationUnit*'s resource-related elements.

3750 **4.13.4 LanguageSelectionsType**



3751 **Figure 101: LanguageSelectionsType structure.**

3753 *LanguageSelectionsType* provides the type definition for the *Languages* element in *CompositeInstallable*

3754 that describes the languages supported by the SDD as a whole. It also provides the type definition for the

3755 *Languages* element in features that allows a feature to override the SDD-wide definitions.

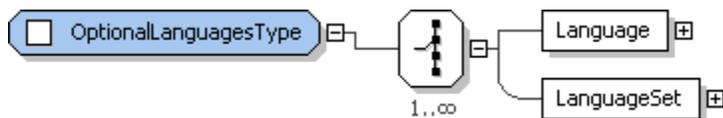
3756 **4.13.4.1 LanguageSelectionsType Property Summary**

| Name      | Type                  | *    | Description   |
|-----------|-----------------------|------|---|
| Mandatory | LanguagesType         | 0..1 | The set of languages that will be deployed.               |
| Optional  | OptionalLanguagesType | 0..1 | The set of language selections available to the deployer. |

3757 **4.13.4.2 LanguageSelectionsType Property Usage Notes**

- 3758 ▪ **Mandatory:** The deployer has no ability to determine if a mandatory language will be deployed.
- 3759 See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].
- 3760 ▪ **Optional:** Each language group in the list of optional languages defines a list of one or more
- 3761 languages that can be selected together.
- 3762 Language groups defined in *LanguageSelections* MAY be used to allow the deployer to select
- 3763 individual languages or to allow selection of multiple languages as a single choice.
- 3764 See the *OptionalLanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.5].

3765 **4.13.5 OptionalLanguagesType**



3766 **Figure 102: OptionalLanguagesType structure**

3768 *OptionalLanguagesType* supports definition of a language or sets of languages that the deployer can

3769 optionally choose for deployment. This type is used to define the global set of optional languages in

3770 *CompositeInstallable* as well as any *Feature*-specific set that overrides the global set for a particular

3771 *Feature*.

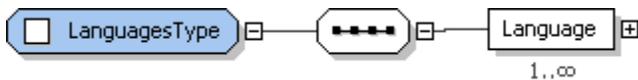
3772 **4.13.5.1 OptionalLanguagesType Property Summary**

| Name        | Type            | *    | Description  |
|-------------|-----------------|------|--|
| Language    | LanguageType    | 1..* | A single language that can be chosen individually. |
| LanguageSet | LanguageSetType | 1..* | A set of languages that can be chosen together.    |

3773 **4.13.5.2 OptionalLanguagesType Property Usage Notes**

- 3774 **Language:** When the SDD author allows the deployer to individually select a language for  
 3775 deployment, it is defined in a *Language* element within *OptionalLanguages*.  
 3776 See the *LanguageType* section for structure and usage details [4.13.7].
- 3777 **LanguageSet:** When the SDD author allows the deployer to select languages for deployment as a  
 3778 set, it is defined in a *LanguageSet* element within *OptionalLanguages*.  
 3779 One example of a reason to define optional languages in a set rather than individually is for a  
 3780 group of languages that are packaged together and whose deployment cannot be separated.  
 3781 See the *LanguageSetType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.8].

3782 **4.13.6 LanguagesType**



3783 **Figure 103: LanguagesType structure.**  
 3784

3785 *LanguagesType* supports expression of a list of languages. It is used in the *Languages* elements of  
 3786 content elements to list languages supported by that content element. It is also used as the type of the  
 3787 *Mandatory* element that lists languages that are deployed by default.

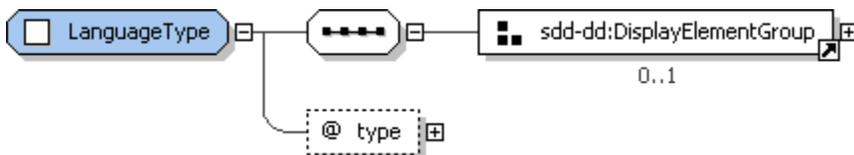
3788 **4.13.6.1 LanguagesType Property Summary**

| Name     | Type         | *    | Description                   |
|----------|--------------|------|-------------------------------|
| Language | LanguageType | 1..* | A single language definition. |

3789 **4.13.6.2 LanguagesType Property Usage Notes**

- 3790 **Language:** Each language definition MAY include display information as well as the language code  
 3791 that identifies the language.  
 3792 See the *LanguageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.7].

3793 **4.13.7 LanguageType**



3794 **Figure 104: LanguageType structure.**  
 3795

3796 *LanguageType* supports the definition of display information and the language code for one language. It  
 3797 is used everywhere a language is defined in the SDD.

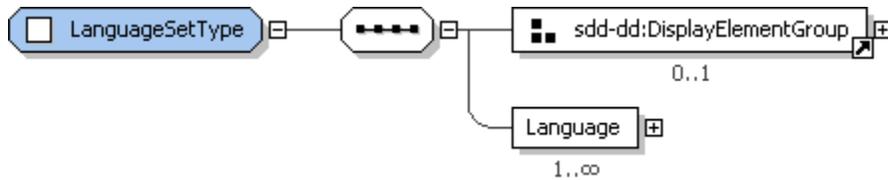
3798 **4.13.7.1 LanguageType Property Summary**

| Name             | Type            | *    | Description                          |
|------------------|-----------------|------|--------------------------------------|
| DisplayName      | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | A name for the language.             |
| Description      | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | A description of the language.       |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | A short description of the language. |
| type             | xsd:language    | 1    | The locale code for the language.    |

3799 **4.13.7.2 LanguageType Property Usage Notes**

- 3800 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
3801 MUST provide a label for the language.
- 3802 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 3803 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
3804 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the language.
- 3805 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 3806 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 3807 ▪ **type:** The *type* attribute MUST be defined as a value that conforms to the set of language codes  
3808 defined by [RFC3066].
- 3809 For example, “de” is a locale code for German and “en-US” is the locale code for English in the  
3810 United States.

3811 **4.13.8 LanguageSetType**



3812 **Figure 105: LanguageSetType structure.**

3813 *LanguageSetType* provides the type definition for the *OptionalLanguages* elements of  
3814 *CompositeInstallable* and *Feature*. It defines a set of languages that can be selected together.  
3815

3816 **4.13.8.1 LanguageSetType Property Summary**

| Name             | Type            | *    | Description                                  |
|------------------|-----------------|------|--|
| DisplayName      | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | A name for the set of languages.             |
| Description      | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | A description of the set of languages.       |
| ShortDescription | DisplayTextType | 0..1 | A short description of the set of languages. |
| Language         | LanguageType    | 1..* | A set of one or more language codes.         |

3817 **4.13.8.2 LanguageSetType Property Usage Notes**

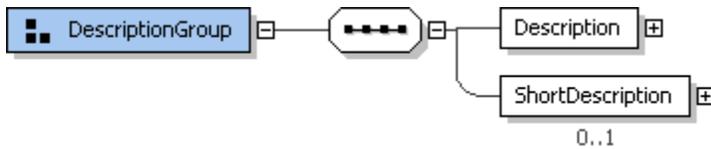
- 3818 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
3819 MUST provide a label for the set of languages.
- 3820 For example, “Eastern European Languages” or “French, English and German”.
- 3821 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

- 3822 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
3823 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the set of languages.  
3824 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
3825 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 3826 ▪ **Language:** The languages defined in this element MUST be selected together.  
3827 See the *LanguageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.7].

## 3828 4.14 Display Information

3829 There are many places throughout the SDD where translatable information intended for display to  
3830 humans MAY be defined. All display information definitions can include a *translationKey* that can be used  
3831 as an index into a file containing translations.

### 3832 4.14.1 DescriptionGroup



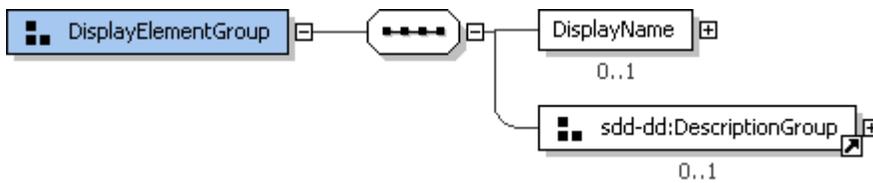
3833  
3834 **Figure 106: DescriptionGroup structure.**

3835 The *DescriptionGroup* type is used throughout the SDD to provide human-readable, translatable,  
3836 descriptive-text elements.

#### 3837 4.14.1.1 DescriptionGroup Property Usage Notes

- 3838 ▪ **Description:** This is a description of the defining element unless usage notes for that element state  
3839 otherwise. It can be as long as necessary to provide a useful description.  
3840 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
3841 See the *DisplayTextType* section for details about associating this text with translated text [4.14.3].
- 3842 ▪ **ShortDescription:** This is a short description of the defining element unless usage notes for that  
3843 element state that it refers to something else. It SHOULD provide a limited description that can be  
3844 used by tools where limited text is allowed, for example, fly-over help.  
3845 See the *DisplayTextType* section for details about associating this text with translated text [4.14.3].

### 3846 4.14.2 DisplayElementGroup



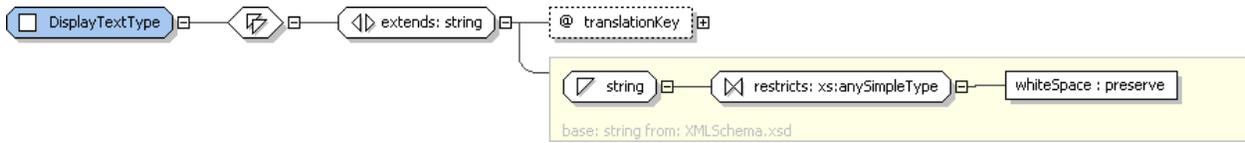
3847  
3848 **Figure 107: DisplayElementGroup structure.**

3849 The *DisplayElementGroup* is used throughout the package descriptor and deployment descriptor to  
3850 provide human-readable, translatable names, descriptions and/or short descriptions for a variety of  
3851 elements.

#### 3852 4.14.2.1 DisplayElementGroup Property Usage Notes

- 3853 ▪ **DisplayName:** This is a label for the defining element unless usage notes for that element state  
3854 otherwise.  
3855 See the *DisplayTextType* section for details about associating this text with translated text [4.14.3].

3856 **4.14.3 DisplayTextType**



3857  
3858 **Figure 108: DisplayTextType Structure.**

3859 Elements of *DisplayTextType* define translatable strings and an optional key to translated text in language  
3860 bundle files. *DisplayTextType* extends the `xsd:string` type with an optional *translationKey* attribute.

3861 **4.14.3.1 DisplayTextType Property Usage Notes**

- 3862 ▪ **translationKey:** The *translationKey* attribute is a value that can be used as an index into a file  
3863 containing translations of *DisplayTextType* elements in the *DeploymentDescriptor* and/or  
3864 *PackageDescriptor*. The value of the *translationKey* MUST match an entry in the message bundle  
3865 referenced by the *descriptorLanguageBundle* attribute in the package descriptor.

3866

3867

## 5 Conformance

3868

### 5.1 General Conformance Statements

3869

An implementation MAY claim conformance to the entirety of the SDD specification (including all conformance levels) or one or more particular conformance levels, and/or one or more particular profiles (SDD conformance levels and profiles are detailed next).

3870

3871

3872

### 5.2 Conformance Levels

3873

An SDD conformance level (CL) is defined, consistent with **[CONFORM]**, as a subset of the schema intended to enable a certain set of capabilities to be achieved, based on SDDs that restrict their content to the particular CL. The purpose of conformance levels is to allow subsets of the full set of capabilities that can be expressed using an SDD to be implemented. The proper subsets are expected to be easier to implement, but still offer features, value and interoperability that make it worthwhile to implement a particular CL in certain circumstances.

3874

3875

3876

3877

3878

3879

SDD conformance levels are designated as CL1 and CL2. CL1 is a proper subset of the schema; CL2 represents the full schema. CL1 is the minimal set or core of the specification that shall be implemented by all products. CL2 includes all of CL1 and consists of the entire specification.

3880

3881

3882

The following sections describe the defined CLs for SDD.

3883

#### 5.2.1 CL Capabilities

3884

Table 1 expresses the capabilities for each defined CL.

|                                  | Conformance Level 1   | Conformance Level 2   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>Description</b>               | Single target, simple package.  | Multi-target, aggregated packages; full deployment capabilities with all functions enabled by the SDD schema.   |
| <b>Objective</b>                 | Serve as the “on-ramp” for SDD adoption. Deploy pre-prepared content that needs limited customization (basic parameters). Descriptors serve as contract between assembly and operations. Exemplary use case is “wrapping” existing packages in SDD.   | Serve as the expected level for newly-authored non-legacy SDDs. Deploy newly-prepared content that has related components in a solution, with various topologies. Most robust specification (and corresponding run-time implementations) of SDD. Exemplary use case is non-trivial, non-legacy solution deployment. |
| <b>Included Schema Functions</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Solution package with single component (singleton IU, CU, or LU; no composite) and single target topology</li> <li>• Solution package dependency checking for given environment</li> <li>• base installations and maintenance</li> <li>• Simple uninstall (based on information in single descriptor)</li> <li>• Ability to deploy existing artifact formats appropriate for the target</li> </ul> | All functions, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggregation (composites)</li> <li>• Features</li> <li>• Selectable features</li> <li>• Conditional content</li> <li>• Variable-target topology</li> <li>• Robust localization</li> </ul>   |

|                           |   |      |
|---------------------------|---|------|
| <b>Excluded Functions</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>environment</li> <li>Some localization possible (localization of the units that are supplied)</li> </ul>   |      |
|                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Features</li> <li>Selectable content</li> <li>Requisites</li> <li>Aggregation</li> <li>Multi-target topology</li> <li>Robust localization</li> <li>Replacements and modifications that change base resource/solution composition (including obsolescence)</li> <li>Backwards compatibility, range enforcement</li> <li>Verification of installation and configuration</li> </ul> | None |

3885 **Table 1: SDD conformance level capabilities summary.**

## 3886 5.2.2 Conformance Level Differences

3887 CL1 SDDs can be used to describe the inputs, requirements and results of processing a single  
3888 deployment artifact. This artifact could be one that deploys, updates, configures or localizes software  
3889 resources. This is useful for simple deployments that require only a single artifact. CL2 SDDs add support  
3890 for aggregation of multiple artifacts and SDDs into solutions; definition of features that optionally select  
3891 content; and requisite software that can be deployed if needed to satisfy requirements. CL1 SDDs can be  
3892 aggregated by CL2 SDDs.

3893 For example, CL2 SDDs can describe a solution that consists of a Web server, an application server,  
3894 a database and one or more applications, in which each of these components is described by its own  
3895 individual SDD and an aggregating CL2 SDD aggregates them into the composite solution.

3896 The differences between CL1 and CL2 that are summarized in Table 1 are detailed next. These make  
3897 use of the information that is in the SDD schema; see [Error! Reference source not found.] for the CL1  
3898 schema files, and [Error! Reference source not found.] for the CL2 schema files. The differences between  
3899 the CL1 and CL2 schema files are isolated to the “sdd-dd” namespace. The “sdd-common” and “sdd-pd”  
3900 namespaces contain identical schema files for each namespace with respect to CL1 and CL2.

### 3901 5.2.2.1 Type Definitions Modified in CL2

3902 A few SDD types used in CL1 have additional elements added in CL2. The types listed in the left column  
3903 of **Error! Reference source not found.** exist in both CL1 and CL2 with different definitions. The  
3904 elements in the right column are the sub-elements added to the type definitions in CL2.

3905

| Type Name                 | CL2 Sub-Element Names              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| DeploymentDescriptorType  | Requisites<br>CompositeInstallable |
| InstallationArtifactsType | RepairArtifact                     |
| ResultingResourceType     | Relationship                       |
| ResultingChangeType       | Relationship                       |
| ResourceConstraintGroup   | UniquenessConstraint               |

| Type Name                         | CL2 Sub-Element Names                          |
|-----------------------------------|--|
|                                   | RelationshipConstraint                         |
| ConditionalResourceConstraintType | UniquenessConstraint<br>RelationshipConstraint |
| RequirementType                   | Dependency                                     |
| AlternativeRequirementType        | Dependency                                     |

3906 **Table 2. Modified Types.**

### 3907 5.2.2.2 Type Structures Modified in CL2

3908 Several SDD types have altered structure between CL1 and CL2. The types listed in the left column of  
 3909 Table 3 are valid for both CL1 and CL2; however, valid structure for these types differs between CL1 and  
 3910 CL2, as shown in the center and right columns.

3911

| Type                       | CL1 Structure  | CL2 Structure  |
|----------------------------|--|--|
| DeploymentDescriptorType   | Choice of one of the following:<br><i>InstallableUnit</i> , <i>ConfigurationUnit</i> ,<br>or <i>LocalizationUnit</i> | Choice of one of the following:<br><i>InstallableUnit</i> , <i>ConfigurationUnit</i> , or<br><i>LocalizationUnit</i> ,<br>or one or more<br><i>CompositeInstallable</i> elements |
| RequirementType            | Sequence of <i>ResourceConstraint</i><br>elements  | Unbounded choice of<br><i>ResourceConstraint</i> elements and<br><i>Dependency</i> elements  |
| AlternativeRequirementType | Sequence of <i>ResourceConstraint</i><br>elements  | Unbounded choice of<br><i>ResourceConstraint</i> elements and<br><i>Dependency</i> elements  |

3912 **Table 3. Altered types in CL2.**

### 3913 5.2.2.3 SDD Types Introduced in CL2

3914 As seen in Table 2, CL2 adds two new elements to *DeploymentDescriptor*. The *CompositeInstallable*  
 3915 element provides the definition of an aggregate deployment. *CompositeInstallable* is a complex element  
 3916 with many sub-elements. The second element added to *DeploymentDescriptor* is *Requisites*. *Requisites*  
 3917 is a list of references to SDDs that can be used, if needed, to satisfy deployment requirements defined in  
 3918 the *CompositeInstallable*.

3919 Table 4 includes the CL2 types that are introduced in support *CompositeInstallable* and *Requisites*

3920

|                             |                            |                              |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| BaseContentType             | FeatureType                | PackageFeatureReferenceType  |
| CompositeInstallableType    | GroupsType                 | ReferencedPackageType        |
| CompositeLocalizationType   | GroupType                  | RelationshipConstraintType   |
| CompositeUnitType           | InternalDependencyType     | RelationshipType             |
| ConstrainedResourceType     | LanguageSelectionType      | RequiredContentSelectionType |
| ContentElementReferenceType | LocalizationContentType    | RequisitesType               |
| ContentListGroup            | MultiplicityConstraintType | ResourceMapType              |

|                             |                       |                          |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| ContentSelectionFeatureType | MultiplicityType      | ResultingChangeMapType   |
| DependencyType              | MultiSelectType       | ResultingResourceMapType |
| FeatureReferenceType        | NestedFeatureType     | SelectableContentType    |
| FeaturesType                | OptionalLanguagesType | UniquenessConstraintType |

3921 **Table 4 SDD types introduced in CL2.**

### 3922 **5.2.2.4 Extended Enumeration Value in CL2**

3923 One SDD type has an additional enumeration value that is valid only for CL2-based implementations. The  
 3924 type listed in the left column of Table 5 is valid for both CL1 and CL2; however, the value in the right  
 3925 column is valid only for CL2.

3926

| Type          | CL2 Enumeration Value |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| OperationType | repair                |

3927 **Table 5 Extended enumeration value in CL2.**

## 3928 **5.3 Profiles**

3929 Profiles are intended to specify detailed information that can be used in an SDD to promote  
 3930 interoperability. An SDD profile is defined consistent with **[CONFORM]**, to identify the functionality,  
 3931 parameters, options and/or implementation requirements necessary to satisfy the requirements of a  
 3932 particular community of users. SDD profiles are intended to enable a specific set of use cases, typically in  
 3933 a particular domain. Profiles are considered largely orthogonal to CLs; whereas a CL is a subset of the  
 3934 schema, a profile specifies the usage of the schema, including appropriate conventions and content  
 3935 values, to accomplish a particular set of use cases (typically in a particular domain).

3936 A *starter profile* is initially defined with version 1.0 of this specification and is published separately. This  
 3937 starter profile defines terms and patterns that can be used to generate other specific profiles and  
 3938 addresses the content values that are required to support the SDD XML examples that also are published  
 3939 separately.

3940 The starter profile is not intended to be a complete vocabulary for all SDDs, but rather to illustrate the  
 3941 format and provide example content so that additional profiles can be generated in the future. The starter  
 3942 profile leverages and extends the CIM standard **[CIM]** for many content values, but other profiles MAY  
 3943 use other content values.

3944 Other profiles MAY be published by the TC in the future, and new profiles can be created as specified in  
 3945 5.3.1.

3946 An implementation MAY claim conformance to one or more particular profiles.

### 3947 **5.3.1 Profile Creation**

3948 The SDD TC has created a starter profile as described in 5.3. The SDD TC MAY create additional profiles  
 3949 in the future.

3950 Others MAY create SDD profiles for use cases, domains, or user communities that are not addressed by  
 3951 the currently available profiles from the SDD TC. When creating new profiles, it is RECOMMENDED that  
 3952 profile creators follow the model of the starter profile and any existing profiles and reuse content from  
 3953 existing standards where possible. It is also RECOMMENDED that implementations publish the profile(s)  
 3954 that they support.

### 3955 **5.3.2 Profile Publication**

3956 The SDD TC publishes the starter profile and MAY publish any other profiles created by the SDD TC.

3957 Profiles created by the SDD TC SHALL be made available by the SDD TC.  
3958 Profiles created by others MAY be published and made available by those parties and/or submitted to the  
3959 SDD TC for consideration for publication by the SDD TC, according to the OASIS policies and  
3960 procedures, including intellectual property rights. The SDD TC MAY publish and make available the new  
3961 profiles through majority vote of the TC.

### 3962 **5.3.3 Profile Applicability**

3963 Profiles are applicable to particular usage models, domains and/or user communities. An implementation  
3964 MAY claim conformance to one or more particular profiles.

## 3965 **5.4 Compatibility Statements**

3966 Versions of the specification use the version value defined in the *schemaVersion* attribute described in  
3967 section 3.2. New versions of the specification MAY update the conformance level contents.

3968 Profiles also use the *schemaVersion* attribute described in section 3.2. New versions of profiles MAY  
3969 update the profile contents.

3970 Minor version updates of the schema, specification and profiles SHALL be backward-compatible with  
3971 proceeding major versions (for example, all “1.x” versions are backward-compatible with version “1.0”).

3972 Moreover, minor version updates of the schema, specification and profiles SHALL be backward-  
3973 compatible with proceeding minor versions of the same major version (for example, version “1.4” is  
3974 backward-compatible with versions “1.3”, “1.2”, “1.1” and “1.0”).

3975 Major version updates of the schema, specification and profiles are NOT REQUIRED to be backward-  
3976 compatible with previous versions and MAY NOT be backward-compatible with previous versions. For  
3977 example, if non-backward-compatible changes occur in version “1.x”, the new version is “2.0”. Although  
3978 new major versions MAY have substantial backward compatibility, backward compatibility is not  
3979 guaranteed for all aspects of the schema across major versions.

## 3980 **5.5 Conformance Clause**

### 3981 **5.5.1 Conformance for Users of This Specification**

3982 An SDD conforms to this specification if it conforms to the SDD schema and follows the syntax and  
3983 semantics defined in the normative portions of this specification. An SDD MAY conform to conformance  
3984 levels CL1 or CL2.

3985 An implementation conforms to this specification if it conforms to, at minimum, conformance level CL1 of  
3986 the SDD schema; supports at least one SDD profile; and follows the syntax and semantics defined in the  
3987 normative portions of this specification. An implementation MAY support conformance levels CL1 or CL2  
3988 and MAY support additional SDD profiles.

### 3989 **5.5.2 Conformance for This Specification Itself**

3990 This section is the conformance claim for how this document conforms to **[CONFORM]**. The conformance  
3991 issues in section 8 of **[CONFORM]** apply to this document as follows:

- 3992 1. This document is applicable to SDDs as defined in this specification. To claim conformance to this  
3993 document, all the requirements in section 5.5.1 SHALL be met.
- 3994 2. This document MAY be implemented in its entirety or in defined conformance levels CL1 and CL2.  
3995 This document does not define profiles, but the SDD TC MAY define profiles that MAY be  
3996 implemented.
- 3997 3. This document allows extensions. Each implementation SHALL fully support all required  
3998 functionality of the specification exactly as specified. The use of extensions SHALL NOT  
3999 contradict nor cause the non-conformance of functionality defined in the specification.
- 4000 4. This document contains no discretionary items.

4001 5. This document's normative language is English. Translation into other languages is permitted.  
4002

4003

---

## A. Schema File List

4004 The SDD schema is implemented by multiple schema files. Types defined in each file are identified by a  
4005 specific namespace prefix, as indicated in the following list:

- 4006   ▪ cd04-sdd-common-1.0.xsd (prefix: sdd-common)  
4007       Contains definitions of common types used in the SDD specification, including identity and fix-identity  
4008       types, UUID and version types, and the display text type.  
4009       <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cd04/CL1Schema/cd04-sdd-common-1.0.xsd>  
4010       <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cd04/FullSchema/cd04-sdd-common-1.0.xsd>
- 4011   ▪ cd04-sdd-deploymentDescriptor-1.0.xsd (prefix: sdd-dd)  
4012       Contains the deployment descriptor specification, including various content types.  
4013       <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cd04/CL1Schema/cd04-sdd-deploymentDescriptor-1.0.xsd>  
4014       <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cd04/FullSchema/cd04-sdd-deploymentDescriptor-1.0.xsd>
- 4015   ▪ cd04-sdd-packageDescriptor-1.0.xsd (prefix: sdd-pd)  
4016       Contains the package descriptor specification, including types related to packages and files.  
4017       <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cd04/CL1Schema/cd04-sdd-packageDescriptor-1.0.xsd>  
4018       <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cd04/FullSchema/cd04-sdd-packageDescriptor-1.0.xsd>

4019

4020 Example SDDs showing the use of the schema can be found at the following address.

4021       <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-examples-v1.0.zip>

4022

4023

---

## B. Acknowledgements

4024 The following individuals have participated in the creation of this specification and are gratefully  
4025 acknowledged:

4026 **Participants:**

4027 Dr. Howard Abrams, CA  
4028 Mr. Joshua Allen, Macrovision Corporation  
4029 Mr. Rich Aquino, Macrovision Corporation  
4030 Mr. Lazar Borissov, SAP AG  
4031 Ms. Debra Danielson, CA  
4032 Mr. Robert DeMason, SAS Institute, Inc.  
4033 Mr. Robert Dickau, Macrovision Corporation  
4034 Mr. Quenio dos Santos, Macrovision Corporation  
4035 Mrs. Christine Draper, IBM  
4036 Mr. Adrian Dunston, SAS Institute, Inc.  
4037 Mr. James Falkner, Sun Microsystems  
4038 Mr. Keisuke Fukui, Fujitsu Limited  
4039 Mr. Randy George, IBM  
4040 Mr. Nico Groh, SAP AG  
4041 Mr. Frank Heine, SAP AG  
4042 Ms. Merri Jensen, SAS Institute, Inc.  
4043 Dr. Hiro Kishimoto, Fujitsu Limited  
4044 Mr. Thomas Klink, SAP AG  
4045 Mr. Jason Losh, SAS Institute, Inc.  
4046 Ms. Julia McCarthy, IBM  
4047 Mr. Art Middlekauff, Macrovision Corporation  
4048 Mr. Brent Miller, IBM  
4049 Mr. Ed Overton, SAS Institute, Inc.  
4050 Mr. Chris Robsahm, SAP AG  
4051 Dr. David Snelling, Fujitsu Limited  
4052 Mr. Thomas Studwell, Dell  
4053 Dr. Weijia (John) Zhang, Dell  
4054  
4055